



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RELEASE



3 3433 08155951 4



Alfred

Robinson



not in R 30 Dec 1918  
**A FIRST HISTORY**

OF

**ROME**

BY

*William  
Spy*  
**W. S. ROBINSON, M.A.**

LATE ASSISTANT MASTER AT WELLINGTON COLLEGE, AND SCHOLAR  
OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

**With Illustrations and Maps**

*NEW IMPRESSION*

**LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.**

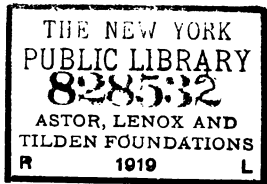
**39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON**

**NEW YORK, BOMBAY, AND CALCUTTA**

1907

*All rights reserved*

*Robinson*  
*BW C*



**BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.**

*First printed, 1890; Reprinted, 1890; Reprinted, with  
corrections, 1898; New Edition, Revised, 1900; New  
Edition, Revised, 1903; Reprinted, August, 1907.*

✓ 6

## PREFATORY NOTE

1 have to thank Messrs. Kelly & Co. for their generous courtesy in permitting me to use the Illustrations to the English Edition of Professor Duruy's History of Rome ; also my friend and colleague Mr. H. Awdry, and my friend Mr. G. M. Edwards, Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge, for their kind assistance in correcting the proofs.

This edition has been revised and corrected, and complete maps added.

August, 1900.

*added*



1. latins

2. Sabellians —

3. Etruscans

4. Gauls —

5. Greeks —

6. Samnites — ↑

7. Sidonians — ↑

8. Umbrians — ↑

9. Aequi — ↑

10. Volsci — ↑

# CONTENTS

CHAP.	PAGE
Introduction . . . . .	I
I. Italy and its Peoples . . . . .	5
II. The beginnings of Rome . . . . .	10
III. The Legends . . . . .	21
IV. The Expulsion of the Kings . . . . .	34
V. The Early Republic—Strife at home and foes abroad—The Decemvirate . . . . .	41
VI. Rome triumphs over the foes abroad . . . . .	55
VII. Capture of Rome by the Gauls—End of the Strife at home . . . . .	62
VIII. First Samnite War—Revolt of the Latins . . . . .	72
IX. Conquest of the Italians—Second and Third Samnite Wars . . . . .	80
X. The War with Pyrrhus . . . . .	92
XI. Carthage . . . . .	104
XII. First Punic War . . . . .	109
XIII. Between the First and Second Punic Wars . . . . .	121
XIV. Second Punic War—First Period—Hannibal's Victories in Italy . . . . .	127
XV. Second Punic War, Second Period—Resistance and Final Victory of Rome . . . . .	140
XVI. Rome begins to conquer the World . . . . .	152
XVII. Conquest of Carthage and Greece—War in Spain . . . . .	163

CHAP.	PAGE
XVIII. State of Rome - . . . . .	175
XIX. The Gracchi—Party Strife begins again - . . . . .	186
XX. Wars against Jugurtha and the Cimbri and Teutones—Rise and Fall of Marius - . . . . .	194
XXI. Social War - . . . . .	206
XXII. Sulla—First Mithridatic and First Civil War - . . . . .	215
XXIII. Pompeius and the Misgovernment of the Senate - . . . . .	227
XXIV. Catilinarian Conspiracy—First Triumvirate - . . . . .	241
XXV. Cæsar in Gaul and Pompeius at Rome - . . . . .	252
XXVI. Civil War between Cæsar and Pompeius - . . . . .	268
XXVII. Cæsar master of the Roman Empire - . . . . .	278
XXVIII. The Second Triumvirate—Struggle between Octavius and Antonius - . . . . .	289
XXIX. Augustus - . . . . .	301
XXX. The Early Empire - . . . . .	314
XXXI. The Later Empire - . . . . .	326
XXXII. The End of the Empire - . . . . .	335

## LIST OF MAPS

Italy - . . . . .	page 4
Rome and Central Italy - . . . . .	" 46
Greece and Neighbourhood - . . . . .	" 174
Roman Provinces at the time of the Gracchi - . . . . .	" 178
The Roman Empire - . . . . .	" 340
General Map - . . . . .	to fold out at end

## INTRODUCTION

**Rome originally a single little City.**—When you begin to read the story of Rome you must not think of the mighty state that governed most of the known world, when the famous Roman Emperors ruled eighteen hundred years ago ; nor, again, must you think that Rome was the capital of a kingdom of Italy, as it is now. Rome in the very old days was a city that made up a little state by itself. Italy was not one kingdom, but a little continent which contained a number of little states, some of them cities like Rome, others scattered tribes. All these little states regarded one another as strangers, and made war and alliances just as the great nations of Europe do now-a-days.

It seems strange to us who belong to a great state, and see great states around us, that a little city could be a state by itself. But so it was in those days. And when you read the story of Ancient Greece, you will find that it was the same there. Afterwards in the Middle Ages most of the cities of Italy again

became separate states ; and you will remember that England in the early times of the Saxons was split up into a number of little kingdoms. In England one kingdom gradually conquered all the others, and so England became a single state ; in the same way Rome gradually conquered the whole of Italy and made it one state.

**The Lessons of Roman History.**—This, then, is what we learn from the story of Rome : how the little city gradually conquered all its neighbours till it ruled over the whole of Italy, and then how it fought with and conquered the other nations round it, sometimes very easily, sometimes after long and terrible wars, till at last it founded that mighty empire that gave peace to the world during the many years that it lasted.

But these old Romans were not only great conquerors, they were also great *rulers* and *law makers*. Having won their empire, they ruled it with wonderful firmness and justice ; and they made such good laws for themselves and the nations under them, that all modern nations have founded their own laws on them. But the Romans did not learn to govern either themselves or their subjects all at once ; so you must not be surprised when you read of their fierce party struggles and cruel civil wars, and their harshness to their subjects when first conquered. You will find

many things in their history to shock you. But you must remember, firstly that the Romans in time learnt experience from their own errors ; secondly, that they were not Christians as we are ; and even Christian nations often commit very wicked and cruel acts ; and, thirdly, that in all that they did they were carrying out, unconsciously perhaps, the high purpose of giving peace to the different nations of the world, and so preparing the way for the spread of Christianity.

# ITALY

Statute Miles.  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6  
For Central Italy see page 46.



camp.

## CHAPTER I.

### *ITALY AND ITS PEOPLES.*

**Geography of Italy.**—The shape of Italy is very easy to understand. It is a long peninsula, exactly like a high-heeled top-boot, running into the Mediterranean in a south-east direction. The toe points south-west, and separated from the toe by a very narrow strait lies the three-cornered island of Sicily,

**The Mountains.**—Italy has two ranges of mountains, both starting from the Mediterranean on the west—the Alps and the Apennines. The Alps, a huge snowy barrier, which in those days men hardly ever dreamt of crossing, cut Italy off from the rest of Europe; they run north for about 150 miles, and then, just at their highest point, Mont Blanc, turn due east. The Apennines, a lower range, run almost straight across to the east coast, and then down the whole length of Italy to the toe and cross the sea into Sicily.

**The Plains, Rivers, and Bays.**—The whole of the north of Italy between the Alps and Apennines is a rich, level plain, watered by the river Padus (Po), the largest of all its rivers. Going down the west coast we come to the more hilly plain of Etruria,



through which flows the Arnus (Arno); next the plain of Latium, separated from Etruria by the Tiber, the second largest river of Italy; then the fertile and beautiful plain of Campania, separated from Latium by the Liris, and watered by the Volturnus; lastly, in the south-east are the hot steaming plains of Apulia and Calabria running down into the heel of Italy, with the little river Aufidus.

The coast of Italy is very straight compared with that of Greece, and has few bays and gulfs. In the south, between the heel and toe, the Iapygian Cape on the east and the Lacinian Cape on the west, lay the Gulf of Tarentum; and on the west coast in Campania, was the beautiful Bay of Cumæ, now so famous as the Bay of Naples, with Mount Vesuvius on its shore, then supposed to be an extinct volcano.

### **The Peoples of Italy.**

(1) **The Latins.**—In the plain of Latium dwelt the Latins, a tribe of sturdy farmers. They used to live chiefly on their farms, but also had fortified strongholds, which grew afterwards into towns, to protect them from their enemies. These little towns—or villages, as we should think them—were independent of one another; but at some early time they joined themselves together into a League called the “League of the Thirty Latin Cities”. They used to meet together at a town called Alba Longa (the long white city), on a hill called Mons Albānus (the Alban Mount), not far south of Rome. Here they used to discuss the common

affairs of the League, and worship their god Jupiter Latiaris; and they used to celebrate games which were called *Ferise Latinæ*.

(2) **The Sabines, and other Sabellians.**—Among the mountains, north, east, and south of the Latins, dwelt other tribes, who were often at war with them—the Volsci, *Æqui*, and the Sabines. As they dwelt among the mountains they did not live by farming as much as the Latins of the plain did, but were fonder of fighting and plundering, and so were very unpleasant neighbours to the Latins, often attacking them and carrying off their cattle and burning their farms. These tribes were of the same race as the Latins, but spoke a different dialect, and are distinguished from them by the name Sabellian. There were other Sabellian tribes who, being further off, do not come into the history for some time; the most important were the Umbrians further north, on the east coast, and the Samnites further south, in the hilly Apennine country. The Samnites were the bravest and hardiest of all the Sabellians, and afterwards fought long wars with Rome.

The Latins and Sabellians did not from the first live in Italy; they were invaders coming probably over the Alps. Of the races which they found in Italy and conquered, little is known—they were probably not exterminated, but mingled with their conquerors. Perhaps the Ligurians, who dwelt in historical times on both sides of the Alps along the sea-coast now called the Riviera, were one of these old races.

(3) **The Etruscans.**—North of Latium, in the plain of Etruria, dwelt a strange people called the Etruscans. They were not a very united people. The different towns were either independent of one another, or joined like the Latins into little leagues. These Etruscans were probably also invaders, who came after the Latins and Sabellians; but it is not known for certain whence they came or what language they spoke. In early times they were very powerful, and inhabited all the country from the Tiber to the Alps, and also the plain of Campania. They alone of the nations of Italy were fond of the sea, but they were great pirates. They were skilled in art, especially architecture, of which their tombs are the only relics; and they also made beautiful vases of pottery. Their religion was a strange and gloomy one, and sometimes they sacrificed human beings. Their priests claimed to be able to discover the will of heaven by augury, that is, by the flight of birds, or by examining victims when sacrificed. The Romans learnt many things from the Etruscans, especially augury, and many religious and other ceremonies.

(4) **The Greeks—Magna Græcia.**—Two other races came to Italy at a much later period, the Gauls and the Greeks. If you have read the history of the Greeks, you will remember that a great many colonists wandered away from the Greek states and built new cities all about the shores of the Mediterranean and Black Sea. Some of these were founded in Sicily, others along the south and west coast of Italy, as far

north as the bay of Cumæ; for Cumæ was a Greek town. So numerous and powerful were these towns that the south of Italy was called *Magna Græcia*, or Great Greece. But afterwards they became weaker, owing to their luxury and quarrels among themselves and the attacks of the Samnites, Etruscans, and other Italians.

(5) **The Gauls—Gallia Cisalpina.**—The latest invaders of Italy were the barbarous Celts or Gauls. At some early period they had crossed the Rhine, and conquered most of the country now called France, but known to the Romans as Gaul; others of them crossed the sea and conquered the British Isles; others even penetrated into Spain. Celtic languages are still spoken in Ireland, Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, and in Brittany in France. Some time after the history of Rome begins, they came into the north of Italy and drove the Etruscans out of the plain between the Alps and Apennines, which was called *Gallia Cisalpina* (or Gaul this side of the Alps), and Gaul itself was called *Gallia Transalpina* (or Gaul beyond the Alps). You will hear a good deal of the Gauls in the history of Rome. ✓

**NOTE.**—The Celtic and Latin languages belong to the family of languages known as Aryan, to which also belong Greek, German and kindred languages (including English), Russian, Persian and Hindoo. Peoples speaking languages of Aryan origin came as invaders into the west and south of Europe; but of their previous history nothing can be said with any certainty. About the Celts especially historians differ very much in their views.

## CHAPTER II.

### *THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME.*

✓  
**Rome.**—On the river Tiber, about fifteen miles from its mouth, where its banks are fringed with low hills, there lay a Latin town somewhat apart from the other towns of the League, on a hill called the Palatine. This was Rome (Roma, which is thought to mean the Stream Town). There are a great many stories about the founding of Rome, and about the different kings, which you will be told in the next chapter. But we know nothing certain until after the kings had been driven out, that is, two hundred and fifty years after Rome is supposed to have been founded; and even then a great deal of the history is very doubtful.

These Romans spoke the same language as the Latins, but according to tradition they were a mixture of Latins, Sabines, and Etruscans. This is not unlikely, for Rome lay near the borders both of the Etruscans and Sabines; and you will read in the legends how a number of Sabines, under their king, joined the Romans, and how, many years afterwards, an Etruscan became king of Rome. Also many Roman customs, as you have been told, came from Etruria.

At any rate, whether they were pure Latins or not,

the Romans, it seems, from a very early time were quite distinct from the League of the Latin cities; and during the time of the kings they fought and conquered Alba Longa, and took its place as the head of the League.

**Clans and Families—Names.**—The Romans were divided into clans (*gentes*). Each *gens* had a name, such as the gens Fabia, the gens Julia, and was supposed to be descended from a common ancestor. Usually the gens was divided into a number of families (*familie*), which also had a special name derived from some peculiarity of its founder; and as Romans also were called by personal, which were like our Christian, names, such as Titus, Marcus, Quintus, we shall find that a Roman usually had three names altogether. Thus Marcus Tullius Cicero belonged to the Cicero family of the gens Tullia, and his own name was Marcus; his brother was called Quintus Tullius Cicero. This, you see, is very different from the custom of the Greeks, who never had more than one name, as Pericles, Aristides.

**The Roman Religion.**—The old Romans were very religious; but their religion was very simple, much simpler than that of the Greeks, for they were not clever enough to invent such beautiful stories and legends about their gods as the Greeks did. The poems of Ovid and Virgil and other Latin poets are indeed full of stories about the Roman gods; but these were all borrowed from the Greeks, for when the Romans learnt about the religion of the Greeks they found that some of their gods were like the

Greek ones, and so then they tried to make out that the two religions were exactly the same and took all the Greek stories.

The head of the Roman religion was the king ; but many of the gods had a special priest, called a Flamen ; there were also other priests called Pontificēs, with the Pontifex Maximus at their head. We do not know what Pontifex is derived from ; some people think it means bridge-maker, from *pons*, a bridge, and *facio*, and that bridge-making was a religious ceremony with the Romans.

Then there were Augurs (from *avis*, a bird), whose duty it was to discover the will of heaven before anything important was undertaken, by the flight of birds or from the body of the victim ; and the Vestal Virgins, virgins of the noblest birth who were not allowed to marry, and tended the sacred fire in the temple of Vesta, the Goddess of the Hearth, which was never allowed to go out.

**The Roman Home.**—Like the Latins, the Romans were chiefly farmers, living on their little farms round the Palatine. A true Roman in the old days considered it unworthy to have anything to do with trade. In each family the father, at the head of it, had absolute power over all its members, even his grown-up sons. He could even put them to death if he chose. For these stern old Romans had great belief in the power of law and the duty of obedience ; and this was perhaps why they became such a great nation afterwards. In Greece we read of children

despising and ill-treating their parents ; but the Greeks never learnt how to rule other nations. Each family had its own worship, and the father was the priest, the mother the priestess ; a fire was kept ever burning for Vesta, like the public fire tended by the Vestal Virgins ; and little images of household gods were worshipped, called *Lārēs* and *Penātēs*. The houses were of only one storey ; they consisted of a large hall, called the “atrium,” with the sleeping-rooms round it. In peace, the dress of a Roman was a close-fitting tunic, and over that a large, white, woollen shawl, called a “toga,” which was thrown round the body in graceful folds, as you see in the picture.





**Slavery and the Law of Debt.**—The Romans employed slaves to do menial work; but they were few in number in these early days, and, though obedience was sternly enforced, they were not cruelly treated, but were regarded as members of the household. Slaves were either the children of slave parents, or prisoners of war, or sometimes debtors who could not pay their debts. For the Roman law about debt was very harsh; (if a man could not pay a debt, his creditor could throw him into prison and sell his goods, or even make him a slave.) This law of debt sometimes caused great trouble in Roman history. ✓

✓ **The Army.**—Every Roman citizen between the ages of seventeen and forty-six was obliged to fight in the army: he was called a young man (*juvenis*); when he was past forty-six he became an old man (*senex*). Each soldier had to provide his own arms, helmet, breastplate, shield, greaves on the legs, sword and spear. Those who could afford a horse served as cavalry (*equites*); and you will find afterwards that rich men at Rome were called equites even though they were not soldiers at all. The army was called the Legio, and is said to have originally numbered 3000 infantry and 300 cavalry. Then, when the army increased in numbers, each division of about 3000 soldiers was called a Legio (Legion). Afterwards the legion became still more numerous, and at last numbered about 6000.

**The Government of Rome—(1) The King.**  
—You must now hear how the Romans were

governed. At the head of the State was the king : he led the army in war, and administered law and justice at home ; he did not rule by right of birth but was elected. His toga had a scarlet border ; he sat on an ivory chair, called a curule chair (*sella curūlis*), and was attended by twenty-four lictors. The lictors were like our policemen : they kept order and arrested criminals. When in attendance on the king, they carried a bundle of rods, called the fasces, with an axe in the middle, as a sign that the king could punish citizens by scourging or putting them to death.

(2) The Senate.—To give him advice the king used to summon an assembly of the heads of families (*patres*), called the Senate (*senatus*, from *senex*, an old man) : it consisted of 300 members. The senators could speak and advise the king, but could not prevent him doing what he wished ; they also chose the new king.

(3) The Assembly of the People (Comitia Curiata).—When the king wished to pass a law, or declare war or make peace, after consulting the Senate, he called together a meeting (*comitia*) of the whole people in the market place (*forum*). No man was allowed to make a speech ; they might only vote yes or no. The voting was done by divisions, called curiæ, each curia having one vote. So the assembly was called the Comitia Curiata. It also formally accepted the king chosen by the Senate ; and if anyone was condemned to death by the king he had the right to be tried by the people ; this was called the *provocatio*

*ad populum* (appeal to the people). Thus though the king really managed everything, he had to regard the feelings of his subjects; and each Roman citizen felt that he was a free man, not a mere slave.

**The Plebeians.**—The Roman citizens who fought in the army and voted in the *Comitia Curiata* were not the only inhabitants of Rome. There was also, apparently from the earliest days of the city, an inferior population, known as the *Plebs* (the me *plebeians*). The full citizens called themselves *Patricians* (from *pater*), which seems to mean belonging to the families of senators (*patres*). The *Patricians* did not consider the *Plebeians* as citizens; they had no rights, and no vote in the assembly, and did not fight in the army. But the *Plebeians* were not left utterly unprotected. Each *Plebeian* was under the protection of some powerful *Patrician*, who was called his patron (*patrōnus*), and he was called the *Patrician's* client (*cliens*). A client had to perform certain duties for his patron, and if the client were wronged the patron could speak for him in the court of law and obtain him redress. Who the *Plebeians* were is a disputed question. Some seem to have been the remains of conquered peoples; some no doubt were settlers who came to Rome for trade; others, freed slaves.

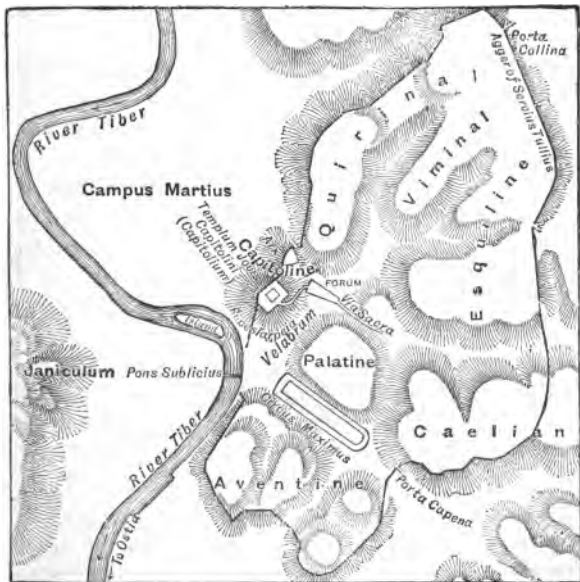
**The Plebeians made Citizens.**—As time passed on the *Plebeians* increased in numbers, and the great body of them seem to have been under the protection of the king, instead of being clients of *Patrician* houses. At last a king arose, said to have been

Servius Tullius in the legends, who thought that they ought to fight in the army. So he divided the whole people, Patricians and Plebeians alike, into classes, according to their wealth, and made them all fight. First came the richest men of all, who, as before, were the cavalry (*equites*). After them came the first class, those who could afford the full armour of the heavy-armed foot-soldier, as has been described; then four other classes of those who could not afford so much armour; down to the poorest, who had only darts, and slings, and cudgels.

**The Comitia Centuriata.**—Next (whether at the same time or afterwards we do not know), the Plebeians were allowed to vote in the assembly; for if they fought in the wars, it was only fair that they should be allowed to say whether there was to be war or not. A new assembly was now made of all the citizens in their classes: it was called the *Comitia Centuriata*, because the cavalry and the five classes of foot-soldiers were also divided into smaller divisions called centuries (which properly means a hundred men, from *centum*), and each century had one vote. There were eighteen centuries of the cavalry, and eighty-two in the first class, but only ninety-three in the other four classes. So the rich people could always outvote the poor. Still the Plebeians now had a vote, and that was something to begin with. The *Comitia Centuriata* was now the assembly of the Romans instead of the *Comitia Curiata*, in which only the Patricians voted; but there were certain religious and other duties which

could only be performed by the *Comitia Curiata*, and so it was kept up as a mere form. ✓

✓ **The City of Rome.**—Rome had now grown to be a much larger and stronger State than when it was the little settlement on the Palatine Hill. Little



*H. Allen & Son, London.*

by little it spread over the other hills, and at last became the famous "City of the Seven Hills"; these were the Palatine in the centre, and round it the Capitoline, Quirinal, Viminal, Esquiline, Caelian, Aventine.

Opposite the Palatine Hill on the other side of the Tiber was a fortress on a hill called the Janicŭlum to protect the city against the Etruscans; it was joined to the city by a wooden bridge called the Pons Sublicius (Bridge of Piles). Under the Capitoline and Palatine Hills lay the market-place (Forum), where the Comitia assembled, with the Senate House (Curia) close by, called the Curia Hostilia, because it was said to have been built by Tullus Hostilius. A fig-tree grew in the Forum which the Romans regarded with special reverence, because under it, according to the story, the she-wolf suckled Romulus and Remus. On the Capitoline Hill were the Capitol, a great temple to Jupiter Capitolinus, and the Arx or citadel; at one end was the Tarpeian Rock (Rupes Tarpeia), a sheer cliff 80 feet high, from which criminals were dashed to death. A road called the Sacred Way (Via Sacra) passed through the Forum and then wound its way up the slopes of the hill into the Capitol. It was by this road that the solemn procession of a victorious general went with the long train of soldiers, spoil, and prisoners—the famous Roman Triumph. On the right of the road, at the foot of the hill, was a dungeon, the Tullianum; hither the prisoners were led and put to death, while the conqueror went on to the Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus to offer his thanks for the victory.

In a hollow between the Palatine and Aventine was the great circus (Circus Maximus), a race-course 700 yards long, 135 broad, with seats along either

side for spectators. Here the great Roman games (Ludi Romani) were held—chariot races, foot races, and other contests. There was also a great underground drain of arched brickwork, the *Clōāca Maxima*, to drain off the water from the low, swampy ground between the hills and the Tiber. So wonderfully was this work built that parts of it still remain unharmed by time, big enough for a waggon to drive down.

When the city had at last spread over all the seven hills it was fortified by a rampart five miles in circuit. This rampart is said to have been built by the King Servius Tullius and was called the *Agger Servi Tulli* (Wall of Servius Tullius). It was the only wall that Rome had till long after the end of the Republic, when more extensive fortifications were built by the Emperor Aurelian.

Close under the walls on the north, in the bend of the Tiber, was a level plain sacred to the god Mars, the *Campus Martius*. Here the legions used to be drilled and reviewed, and the young Romans trained their limbs in racing, wrestling, and all war-like sports. The *Comitia* also used often to meet here instead of in the Forum.

O.



## CHAPTER III.

### *THE LEGENDS.*

**Arrival of Æneas and the Trojan Exiles in Italy—Foundation of Lavinium.**—When the city of Troy was taken by the Greeks under King Agamemnon after the ten years' siege, Ænēas, one of the bravest Trojan warriors, son of Anchises, a prince of the royal house, and of the goddess Venus, escaped with a small band of followers. Favoured by the special protection of Heaven, after many adventures, he landed in Italy at the mouth of the river Tiber, in the country of the Latins. The Latins, with their King Latinus, received the strangers kindly; and Latinus agreed that Æneas should marry his daughter Lavinia. But Lavinia was already betrothed to Turnus, prince of the neighbouring tribe of the Rutuli. So a war broke out in which the Rutuli, who were now joined by the Latins, were defeated, and Turnus was killed by Æneas. Then Æneas married Lavinia, and in her honour called the new city which he founded Lavinium. Soon the old King Latinus died and Æneas became king over the united people of the Latins and Trojans; but not long afterwards he was killed in battle and taken up to heaven.



**Alba Longa founded by Ascanius.**—Æneas was succeeded by his son Ascanius, who left Lavinium, and founded Alba Longa (see page 6) on the Alban Mount. Ascanius was a great warrior: he fought victoriously against the Etruscans and other surrounding nations. So Alba Longa became the chief town of all Latium; and after Ascanius a long line of his descendants reigned there as kings of Latium.

**Amulius and Numitor—Birth of Romulus and Remus.**—One of these kings left two sons, Numitor and Amulius. Amulius was the younger, but he was fiercer and stronger than Numitor, and he drove him from the throne and made his daughter, Rhea Silvia, a Vestal Virgin. But Rhea Silvia was secretly espoused by the war-god Mars, and she gave birth to twins. Then the cruel Amulius ordered her to be buried alive and the infants to be thrown into the Tiber. But it chanced that at that time the Tiber had overflowed its banks; so, when the water went down, the cradle with the infants in it was left on dry ground near the hill afterwards called the Palatine. And when the helpless infants began to cry, a she-wolf coming down to drink heard them and came and gave them suck. Then a shepherd of King Amulius by name Faustulus, who lived on the Palatine, found and took them home, and gave them to his wife to bring up, and called them Romulus and Remus.

Romulus and Remus when they grew up became distinguished for strength and courage above all the

shepherds of the king. One day by chance Numitor discovered that they were his grandsons; so at the head of a band of shepherds they attacked Alba Longa and killed Amulius. Thus Numitor was restored to his throne, and reigned again over the Latins at Alba Longa.

**Foundation of Rome by Romulus—Death of Remus.**—Then Romulus and Remus determined to found a new city on the spot where they had been saved by the she-wolf. But they could not agree which should have the honour of founding this city; so they resolved to obtain a sign from the gods by means of birds. Romulus therefore posted himself on the Palatine Hill and Remus on the Aventine. And first of all Remus saw six vultures, and sent a messenger to tell Romulus; but at the moment the messenger came Romulus saw twelve vultures; so each claimed the chief honour, Remus because he saw a sign *first*, Romulus because his sign was the *greater*.

Romulus then began to build the wall for his city on the Palatine Hill; but Remus in scorn leapt over the wall as it was just beginning to rise. Then Romulus in anger slew Remus, and exclaimed, "So perish whosoever else shall cross these walls". So Romulus founded his city on the Palatine Hill, and called it after his own name Rome. Then, to make his city larger, he made a fortress on another hill afterwards called the Capitoline; this he proclaimed an asylum or place of refuge, and many outlaws and fugitives from the surrounding states flocked to it.

**Rape of the Sabine Women—War with the Sabines.**—The next thing was to obtain wives for the new citizens. But they were little better than a band of robbers, and the neighbouring towns would not let them marry their daughters. Then Romulus saw that he must use craft. He proclaimed a great festival, and invited the Sabines of Curēs and other towns. In the midst of the games at a signal from Romulus, a number of armed men suddenly rushed in and seized all the Sabine maidens.

Thus the Romans obtained wives for themselves. But the Sabine maidens were not left unavenged. For the Sabines made war on Rome; but Romulus defeated them; he slew the king, who led them, with his own hand, and dedicated his arms to Jupiter calling them *Spolia Opīma* (the Splendid Spoils); and only twice afterwards did a Roman general kill the enemy's general and win the *Spolia Opīma*.

Another Sabine army under Titus Tatius, King of Cures, marched against Rome. The commander of the Roman citadel, on the Capitoline Hill, had a daughter called Tarpeia; and the Sabines asked her to let them into the fortress. Tarpeia consented if they would give her the bright things on their left arms, for she coveted their golden armlets. But when she had opened the gate, they threw on her the shields, which they also carried on their left arms, and slew her. Thus the Sabines gained the Capitoline Hill. Then there was much fighting between the Sabines on the Capitoline and the Romans on the Palatine. But at last the

Sabine women with dishevelled hair ran in between their husbands and their fathers, and prayed them to make peace. ✓

✓ **Union of the Sabines and Romans—Reign of Romulus.**—So peace was made: the two nations became one under the two kings, Romulus and Titus Tatius, and were called by the two names of Romans and Quiritēs or men of Cures. But in memory of the wicked act of Tarpeia, the cliff at the end of the Capitoline Hill was called the Tarpeian Rock, and criminals were hurled to death from it (see page 19).

Not long after Titus Tatius died, and Romulus reigned alone over the united peoples. He was a brave and warlike king, and made Rome powerful by conquering the nations round. He arranged the government of the City, and instituted the Senate and Assembly of the People of which you have heard. After a reign of forty years he was taken up to heaven while reviewing his army, and worshipped ever after as a god under the name of Quirīnus.

**Numa Pompilius, the Second King.**—After Romulus a Sabine named Numa Pompilius was elected king. He was a very holy man, and taught the Romans the arts of peace and the worship of the gods. He first made the priests of whom you have been told, the Pontifices, Flamens, and Augurs. He also marked out the year by the course of the sun, dividing it into twelve months of twenty-eight days each by the course of the moon; and since the twelve months were not long enough, he taught the priests how to put in extra

months. In all that he did he was instructed by heaven; for every night he used to meet a holy nymph named Egeria in a grove near the city, and she used to tell him what to do.

Numa made peace with all the nations round, for no one dared to attack the Holy King. And he built a temple to the two-faced god Janus, the doors of which were to be open in time of war and shut in time of peace. So they were shut all the days of Numa, but after his days only twice in all Roman history.

**Tullus Hostilius the Third King—Conquest of Alba Longa—The Horatii and Curiatii.**—The next king was a Roman, Tullus Hostilius. He was a great warrior like Romulus. In his reign there was a war between Rome and its mother city, Alba Longa. When the armies met, the Alban general proposed to settle the quarrel by a combat between chosen champions, and Tullus assented. Now there were in the Alban army three brothers called Curiatii, and in the Roman army three brothers called Horatii of the same age, and their mothers were sisters. So the Curiatii and Horatii were chosen as champions to fight, and settle whether Alba should govern Rome or Rome Alba. In the battle two Horatii were killed, but all the Curiatii were wounded. Then the remaining Horatius began to fly and the Albans shouted for joy, but the Romans were dismayed. But the Curiatii, owing to their wounds, could not all pursue with equal speed; so Horatius turning round suddenly slew the nearest

Curiatius before the other could help him; in the same way he slew the second, and lastly the third. So Horatius returned to Rome in triumph with the spoils.

But his sister was betrothed to one of the Curiatii; and when she came out to meet him and saw her lover's coat, the work of her own hands, all covered with blood, she wept and bewailed his fate. Thereupon Horatius drew his sword and stabbed her to the heart, exclaiming, "So perish every Roman woman who mourns over an enemy". For this deed Horatius was condemned to death; but he appealed to the People, who gave him his life (see page 15).

**Destruction of Alba Longa—End of Tullus Hostilius.**—At first the Albans and their general Mettus submitted to the Romans as they had agreed, but afterwards they tried to revolt. Then Tullus had Mettus torn in pieces by wild horses; and Alba Longa was destroyed except the temples, and all the Albans were brought to Rome, made Roman citizens, and settled on the Cœlian Hill. Thus Rome became the chief city of Latium.

But Tullus grew more and more fierce and warlike and neglected the gods, so that at last they sent a pestilence on him and on the city. Then Tullus grew frightened, and he found the books of Numa, and tried to sacrifice according to them. But Jupiter would not accept these sacrifices, and smote both him and his house with his thunderbolt. So Tullus died after reigning thirty-two years.

**Ancus Marcius, the Fourth King.**—Then the Senate and people elected a grandson of the pious Numa, called Ancus Marcius. He restored the worship of the gods, and tried to bring back the peaceful times of his grandfather. But the Latins, despising this peaceful king, attacked and plundered the Roman land. Then Ancus Marcius declared war on them in due form and defeated them; and he carried off the citizens of the towns which he took, and settled them on the Aventine Hill. He also fortified the hill Janiculum, on the other bank of the Tiber, and joined it to Rome by a bridge called the Pons Sublicius; and he built the port of Ostia, at the mouth of the Tiber.

**Lucius Tarquinius comes to Rome.**—In the reign of Ancus Marcius there came to Rome from the Etruscan town Tarquinii a stranger named Lucūmo. He was the son of Demarātus, an exile from Corinth in Greece; but the Etruscans despised him as a foreigner, so he came to Rome by the advice of his wife Tanāquil, who was a wise woman and could read the future. He called himself Lucius Tarquinius, after his birthplace. He soon made himself liked at Rome by his wealth and courteous manners, and rose to such honour that King Ancus made him guardian of his sons.

**Lucius Tarquinius, the Fifth King.**—But still Tarquinius was not contented; and, when Ancus Marcius died, he persuaded the Assembly of the People to elect himself as king, for the sons of Ancus

were not yet grown up. So Tarquinius the foreigner became King of Rome. He had great wars against the Latins, and Sabines, and Etruscans, and took many towns from them. He was a very energetic king, and made many changes at Rome, bringing in Etruscan customs. He also began great buildings, especially the Cloaca Maxima and the Temple to Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill, and made the Circus Maximus (see pages 19, 20).

### **Tarquinius and the Augur Attus Navius.—**

One day when King Tarquinius was intending to make some change in the State, the augur Attus Navius said that it could not be done unless the gods were favourable. Tarquinius in a rage said, mocking, "Tell me by your augury whether what I am thinking of at the present moment can be done". Attus replied that it could; and Tarquinius replied, "I was thinking that you should cut through this whetstone with a razor". And lo! Attus took the razor and cut through the whetstone. Then Tarquinius obeyed the directions of the augur; and ever afterwards the Romans always consulted augury before doing anything important.

**Death of Tarquinius.**—Now the cause of the death of Tarquinius was as follows. In the early part of his reign there was a boy born in his palace called Servius Tullius, whose mother was a slave. He was seen asleep one day, with a flame playing round his head. The servants wished to extinguish it with water, but Queen Tanaquil forbade them, and told



her husband that the boy was destined to a high fate. So Tarquinius brought him up as his own son, and so noble did he grow that he gave him his daughter in marriage. But the two sons of Ancus Marcius were still alive, and were much offended that Tarquinius, after first depriving them of their rights, should now make a slave his son-in-law instead of one of them. So they hired two shepherds, who came to the king pretending to have a quarrel; and while he was listening to one, the other raised an axe and struck Tarquinius on the head. The murderers were seized by the guards, and the old king was laid on his bed, where he soon after died.

**Servius Tullius, the Sixth King.**—But the sons of Ancus, though they killed Tarquinius, were baulked of their object. For Queen Tanaquil ordered the palace to be closed, and said to the people, “The king is only wounded, and will soon recover; meanwhile Servius Tullius will carry on the government”. Then the sons of Ancus, thinking that they had failed, fled from the city; but Tanaquil, when she saw that the power of Servius Tullius was firmly established, at last announced that the king was really dead.

So Servius Tullius became king. He fought against the Etruscans of Veii and conquered them; but he made a treaty with the Latins by which Rome was acknowledged as the head of Latium, and the Romans and Latins instituted a common yearly festival to Diana on Mount Aventine. He also built a wall round the city called the *Agger Servii Tullii*, and

allowed the Plebeians to serve in the army and vote in the Assembly (see page 17). ✓

✓ **Murder of Servius.**—Servius reigned forty-four years, and his end was, like that of Tarquinius, one of violence. When the sons of Tarquinius, Aruns and Lucius, grew up, Servius married them to his two daughters. Now Aruns was good, and Lucius was wicked; but Lucius' wife was good, and Aruns' wife, who was called Tullia, was wicked. Then Lucius, encouraged by the wicked Tullia, murdered his own wife and his brother Aruns. So Lucius and Tullia were free to marry one another and carry out their wicked designs together.

Now many of the Patricians were angry with Servius because he had given power to the Plebeians, so Lucius persuaded them to help him to make himself king. When everything was ready he surrounded himself with a body of armed men, and called the Senate together in the name of King Tarquinius. King Servius heard what was happening, and came down to the senate house. A violent quarrel arose. Tarquinius seized his old father-in-law and threw him down the senate house steps, and then sent some of his adherents after him, who murdered him as he was making the best of his way back to his palace.

Meanwhile the wicked Tullia drove in her chariot to the senate house to salute her husband as king; and as she was driving back she came to the street where her murdered father was lying; but she ordered her charioteer to drive on over the body, so that she

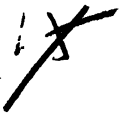
was sprinkled with her father's blood. Henceforward the Romans called the street the *Vicus Scelerātus*, or "Street of Crime".

**Tarquinius Superbus, the Seventh and last King.**—Thus Lucius Tarquinius obtained the throne by crime, not by the will of the people; and, as you would expect, he governed very harshly, oppressing the people grievously, and never consulting the Senate, but acting just as he thought fit or his wife Tullia advised him. So the Romans called him Superbus (the Proud). But Tarquinius was a mighty soldier, and made Rome more powerful than ever by conquering many of the Latin cities round her; he also was very fond of building, as tyrants often are, and he forced the people to labour at the temples and other great works which he built. Thus by his wars and buildings he kept the people occupied, and prevented them from rising against him, and so reigned many years.

**Tarquinius and the Sibylline Books.**—King Tarquinius was very impious, and held religion in great scorn; and when one day an old woman, a prophetess or Sibyl, came and said that she had nine books containing prophecies to sell, he sent her away contemptuously. The next day she came again with only six, for she had burnt three, and offered them at the same price as the nine, but Tarquinius laughed at her all the more. Then she burnt three more, and offered the remaining three still for the same price. Then the king was astonished, and, thinking there must be something valuable in them, bought the

books. And the Romans kept these Sibylline books, and always consulted them in time of trouble.

After a time the gods troubled Tarquinius for his wickedness with dreams and omens. So he sent his two sons and his nephew Junius, whom men called Brutus, because they thought him stupid, to consult the great Greek oracle at Delphi. And one question the young men asked the oracle was, Which of them should succeed Tarquinius? and the oracle replied, "He who first kisses his mother". Thereupon the two sons of Tarquinius determined to draw lots to decide which should first kiss their mother; but Brutus, as he was coming away from the oracle, pretended to stumble and fell on his face, for he perceived that the oracle meant the earth, the mother of all men. How the oracle came true you will be told in the next chapter.



## CHAPTER IV.

### *THE EXPULSION OF THE KINGS.*

**The Expulsion of the Kings, B.C. 510.**—We do not know whether the story of Tarquinius Superbus is true; but it is certain that at last a king arose who tried to set himself above the laws and would not consult the Senate, and his name may have been Tarquinius Superbus. At length the Romans rose against him and drove him out; and solemnly declared that there should never again be a king at Rome.

**The Consuls.**—Henceforward there were to be two rulers instead of one, so that each would prevent the other from becoming too powerful; they were elected from the Patricians only by the Assembly of the People, and ruled for one year. They were first called praetors (generals), and afterwards consuls, which is thought to mean colleagues (*cum sedeo*, "to sit together"). The consuls had the same powers and duties as the old kings; they were each attended by twelve lictors with fasces and axes; they sat on ivory curule chairs, and wore a scarlet-bordered toga. But soon after the expulsion of the kings, to show that

the people were now sovereigns, it was ordered that when the consuls entered the Assembly of the People, the lictors should lower the fasces as a mark of respect.

**The Senate under the Republic — The Dictator.**—The Senate now really governed Rome, for, though the consuls had the same powers as the old kings, they could not have the same authority, as they only ruled for one year. So, instead of *advising* the consuls as it had advised the kings, the Senate *ordered* them to do what it thought right.

Sometimes, as might have been expected, it was found inconvenient to have two heads to the State, especially when Rome was in great danger. On such occasions the Senate ordered the consuls to name a man to be a single ruler, who was called Dictator. A Dictator could not rule for more than six months, and was always appointed to do some particular thing; he had supreme power over everyone, including the consuls, and there was no appeal from his sentence. So you see that the Dictator was more powerful than the kings themselves for the short time that he ruled.

**The Story of the Expulsion of the Kings.**—The story which the Roman historians tell of the expulsion of the Kings is as follows: For many years the Romans bore the tyranny of Tarquinius Superbus, but at last his overthrow was brought about by the wickedness of his son Sextus. Tarquinius, in one of his many wars with the Latins, was besieging the town of Ardea. Sextus and the other princes were in their

father's camp, and also their cousin Tarquinius Collatinus. One day the princes were talking about their wives, and Collatinus said that his wife was the most virtuous ; so, to settle the question, they resolved to visit their wives suddenly and find out what they were doing. They first went to Rome, where they found the princes' wives enjoying themselves with feasting and merriment. Thence they rode to Collatinus' home at Collatia, where they found Lucretia sitting among her maids spinning. So they decided that Lucretia was the most virtuous.

But Sextus was seized with a wicked passion for Lucretia, and he returned and brutally outraged her. And in the morning Lucretia sent for her husband Collatinus and her father, and when they had come and Brutus with them, she told them what had happened, and stabbed herself before their eyes. Then Brutus persuaded the people to drive out the tyrant Tarquinius and his wicked family ; and when the army at Ardea heard of it, they revolted from Tarquinius and returned to Rome. So the people of Rome drove out their king ; and instead of a king they elected two consuls, who ruled for one year only. And the first elected were Brutus and Collatinus. Thus the oracle was fulfilled, and Brutus succeeded Tarquinius. ✓

✓ **Attempts to restore the Tarquins (I)—Conspiracy of Brutus' Sons.**—There were some among the nobles who conspired to restore the Tarquins, and among them were the sons of Brutus. But the conspiracy was revealed to the Senate by a slave, and

the conspirators were all punished by death. And Brutus did not try to save his sons, but ordered them to be put to death like the others before his eyes. Then the Romans drove out of Rome everyone of the name of Tarquinius. So even Collatinus was obliged to give up his consulship and leave the city, and Publius Valerius Poplicōla (*populus colo* "to love the people") was chosen consul in his place.

(2) **Veii and Tarquinii.**—But Tarquinius had retired to his native town Tarquinii in Etruria, and he persuaded the people of Tarquinii and Veii to help him to regain his throne. Then a fierce battle was fought between the Etruscans and Romans, in which Aruns, son of Tarquinius, and Brutus slew one another; and when the day was ended the battle was still doubtful. But in the middle of the night the voice of Silvānus, the god of the forest, was heard saying that the Etruscans were vanquished because they had lost one man more than the Romans. Whereupon the Etruscans returned to Etruria.

(3) **Lars Porsenna—Stories of Horatius and Mucius Scævola.**—Then Tarquinius appealed for help to Lars Porsenna, king of Clusium, the greatest town in all Etruria. Porsenna raised a great army, which the Romans could not resist, and marched against Rome. And he came upon the Romans so suddenly that he seized the Janiculum, before the Pons Sublicius could be cut down. But in this moment of peril three brave Romans—Horatius Cooles, Spurius Lartius, and Titus Herminius—held



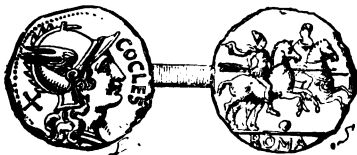
the whole Etruscan army at bay till the bridge was destroyed.

Then Lars Porsenna besieged Rome with his army, and ravaged the country all round. The Romans were now in great straits; and one day a noble Roman called Mucius determined to kill Lars Porsenna. So he crossed the Tiber and entered the Etruscan camp by stealth, but he had never seen Lars Porsenna, and by mistake killed his secretary. Then the soldiers seized him and brought him before the king, but he spoke out boldly and said that he had come to kill the king. And when Porsenna began to threaten him, to show that he was not afraid of torture he put his right hand into the fire on an altar close by, and held it there till it was consumed. Then Porsenna was so astonished at his fortitude that he pardoned him. And Mucius told him that three hundred young men of the noblest blood of Rome were banded together to kill him.

Porsenna was so struck by the determination of the Romans that he made peace, without restoring the Tarquins. And the Romans, in gratitude to Mucius, gave him a piece of land; and he was called Mucius Scævōla, or the left-handed, as his right hand had been consumed in the fire.

**(4) The Latins try to restore Tarquinius—The Battle of Lake Regillus.**—Then Tarquinius turned to the Latins, for Mamilius, the prince of Tusculum, the most powerful town of Latium, had married his daughter. So Mamilius persuaded the thirty cities

of the Latin League to fight against Rome and force her to restore the Tarquins. Then the Romans thought that while the danger lasted it would be better to have one man at the head of the State instead of two, so they made a Dictator, named Aulus Postumius, who marched out with his army and met the Latins by a little lake called Lake Regillus, north of the town of Tusculum. There a terrible battle was fought, and the Romans were hard pressed by the Latins; but suddenly two horsemen on white steeds were seen fighting in the thick of the fray, and the Latins could not withstand them, but fled from the field defeated. The two strange horsemen rode back to Rome, bringing tidings of the victory, and the people wondered who they were; but they washed their steeds by the well of Vesta, and then rode to her temple and vanished from sight. So the people knew that they were Castor and Pollux, the great Twin Gods. And they built a temple to them by the well, and instituted a festival in their honour on the Ides of Quintilis (July 15), the day on which the battle was fought. And ever afterwards



COIN COMMEMORATING HORATIUS COCLES AND THE BATTLE  
OF LAKE REGILLUS.

there was to be seen on a rock by Lake Regillus the print of a horse's hoof greater than that of a mortal horse.

After the battle of Lake Regillus the Latins made no further attempt to restore the Tarquins, and a few years afterwards the old king died at Cumæ, in Campania. Thus was the Republic established at Rome.

## CHAPTER V.

### *THE EARLY REPUBLIC—STRIFE AT HOME AND FOES ABROAD—THE DECENVIRATE.*

	B.C.
Beginning of the Wars against the Æqui and Volsci, . . . . .	(about) 500
Secession to the Sacred Mount and Institution of Tribunes, . . . . .	494
Spurius Cassius makes an alliance with the Latins, . . . . .	493
Spurius Cassius put to death, . . . . .	486
Beginning of War with the Etruscans, . . . . .	485
The Decemvirate and Laws of the Twelve Tables, 451-449	

**Result of the Expulsion of the Kings—Decline of the Power of Rome.**—No doubt the Romans were very glad when they had got rid of their tyrannical king, but they soon found that there were fresh troubles in store for them. Tarquinius, as you have been told, had made Rome very powerful abroad; now she lost all her power. She was no longer the head of Latium, but, as the legends tell us, had to fight for her existence, first against the Etruscans, and then against her old allies the Latins. Even if the story of Horatius keeping the bridge be true, it was all she could do to beat off the Etruscans;

but it is much more likely that the story was an invention, and that the Etruscans for a time actually conquered Rome ; for a Roman writer tells us of an old treaty by which the Etruscans forbade the Romans to have arms or any iron implement except such as were necessary for agriculture.

Whatever actually happened, Rome certainly lost all the towns won by the kings ; her territory was limited to a few miles round the city ; she had great difficulty in maintaining herself against her enemies on every side ; and it was not till after many years that she began again her career of conquest.

### **Quarrels of the Patricians and Plebeians.—**

There was another great evil caused by the expulsion of the kings. The kings before Tarquinius Superbus used to protect the Plebeians and prevent the Patricians ill-using them ; but now the Patricians had all the power in their hands, for the Senate and consuls were Patricians, so that the Plebeians found themselves worse off than ever. Very soon a terrible struggle broke out, which lasted many years and did great harm to Rome ; for both Patricians and Plebeians were so blinded by hatred of one another that they did not see they were making Rome weak against her enemies.

**Grievance of the Rich Plebeians.—**There were three things about which the Patricians and Plebeians quarrelled. First of all many of the Plebeians had grown rich by trade, as rich as the Patricians ; they wanted to be made equal to the Patricians, to marry

with them, and become consuls and senators. This was the grievance of the rich Plebeians.

✓ **Grievances of the Poorer Plebeians—The Public Land and the Law of Debt.**—The poorer Plebeians had two other grievances, and it was these that caused most of the trouble, for the poor Plebeians were far more numerous than the rich ones. They formed the bulk of the Roman army, so if they were discontented Rome could not beat her enemies. These grievances were about the Law of Debt and the Public Land (*Ager Publicus*). You have been told about the cruel Law of Debt: many a Plebeian, after fighting for his city all the summer and receiving no pay, found himself on his return home arrested for debt, and the only reward he gained by his valour was slavery.

The Patricians were still more unfair about the Public Land. This was land conquered from an enemy. In the time of the kings part of it used to be distributed in small lots to the poorer citizens, and the rest was let out for tillage to the rich citizens, who had to pay a small rent. But now much of this land had been lost; the Patricians, having all the government in their own hands, kept to themselves what was left and paid no rent for it. So the Plebeians were robbed of their land to which they had a right, and had to pay more taxes, for, as the Patricians paid no rent, there was less money in the Treasury. To pay the taxes they had often to borrow money, and so got into debt and were sold as slaves.

Is it surprising that there was great discontent among the Plebeians?

**The Secession to the Sacred Mount, B.C. 494.** — At last the Plebeians, driven to despair, refused to go out and fight. Twice they were persuaded to go by a promise that the law of debt should be abolished, and twice the promise was broken by the Senate. The second time the Plebeians marched off in a body to a hill four miles east of Rome, called the Sacred Mount (*Mons Sacer*), to found there a new city for themselves. The Senate were in great alarm, for there would not be enough soldiers left to defend Rome; so they sent a rich Plebeian named Menenius Agrippa, a very eloquent man, to persuade them to return. This shows that the rich Plebeians did not always take the side of their poorer brethren. Menenius, according to the story, told the Plebeians a fable. "Once upon a time," said he, "the members of the body all began to grumble, because they had all the work to do, while the belly lay idle and enjoyed the results of their labour; so they agreed among themselves to starve the belly into submission, but the more they starved it the weaker they themselves became." Thus Menenius persuaded the Plebeians that they would not be able to get on without the Patricians; and they agreed to return to Rome, if something was done to protect them against injustice and imprisonment for debt.

**The Tribunes of the Plebs.**—So the Ple

beians returned to Rome; and a law was passed by which new protectors were given them instead of their old protectors the kings. These new protectors were called tribunes of the Plebs (*Tribūni Plebis*). Originally there were two, but afterwards they were increased to five, and later to ten. They were of course Plebeians, and were elected for one year by an Assembly of the Plebeians.\* The office of the tribunes was a very strange one. They could do nothing themselves, but had the right of stopping the act of any magistrate, even of a consul, by "vetoing," that is, forbidding it. Thus if a man was being led off to prison for debt, a tribune could order him to be released. The tribunes were never to leave the city for twenty-four hours, and their doors were to be open day and night, so that anyone who was oppressed could take refuge there. Finally, that the Patricians might not harm them, it was decreed that their persons should be held sacred. The tribunes soon began to use their power to veto even public acts of government in times of discord, and also to bring forward motions in the Assembly of the Plebeians.

**The Hundred Years' War with the Æqui and Volsci.**—During this time, after the war against Lars Porsenna and the battle of Lake Regillus, the great enemies of Rome were the warlike mountain-tribes of the Æqui and Volsci (see page 7). The Æqui dwelt on the slopes of the Apennines east of Rome, the

\* Formerly identified with the "Comitia Tribūta" (see Appendix), but now considered distinct from it.



Volsci in the hill country of South Latium. They were very terrible enemies, and at first seemed likely to overwhelm the Romans. But fortunately the Latins were as much afraid of them as the Romans; and so, in B.C. 493 the Roman consul Spurius Cassius



persuaded the Latins to renew the old alliance with Rome, which had been broken by the battle of Lake Regillus.

This alliance is the first really historical fact in Roman history: for the treaty, with the name of

Spurius Cassius as its author, was inscribed on a pillar of brass, which was existing in the forum in the days of Cicero. The Hernici, who lived between the Æqui and Volsci, joined the Roman alliance soon after.

### The Agrarian Law of Spurius Cassius.—

Not content with saving Rome from her enemies, Spurius Cassius also tried to heal the troubles at home. The appointment of tribunes had indeed alleviated the laws of debt, but it had not stopped the grievance about the public land. This Spurius Cassius tried to heal. He was re-elected consul twice, and in his third consulship (B.C. 486) proposed a law that some of the land, which the Patricians were holding unfairly, should be taken from them and distributed in small lots among the Plebeians. Any law for doing this was called an Agrarian Law (*Lex Agraria*, from *ager*, "land"). There were many agrarian laws in Roman history. The Patricians fiercely opposed this law. They could not stop it being passed by the Assembly of the People, but they managed to prevent it being carried into effect. And when Spurius Cassius' year of office was over, they accused him of trying to make himself a king; and the name of king had such terrors for the people that they forgot the gratitude which they owed him, and allowed him to be condemned. So Spurius Cassius was beheaded and his house razed to the ground. Such was his reward for trying to put an end to the troubles at Rome.

✓ War with Etruria.—Meanwhile year after year the Romans, Latins, and Hernici went on fighting

against the Æqui and Volsci. Year after year the Æqui, like the old Scotch Highlanders, poured down from their mountain strongholds, burning crops and carrying off cattle; while in the south of Latium the Volsci attacked the Latin frontier towns, and the Romans and Latins attacked the Volscian towns. Two years after the death of Spurius Cassius a war also broke out with the southern states of Etruria which lasted ten years, and then was ended by a truce. Nothing is known for certain about what happened in these wars; the Romans and Latins seem to have been very hard pressed, and at times to have been hardly able to hold their own. There are, however, three famous stories about them, which, though mere legends, give some notion of what they were like.

**Stories of the Wars—(I) Coriolanus and the Volsci.**—There was at Rome a brave soldier called Caius Marcius, a Patrician. He had fought at the battle of Lake Regillus and saved the life of a fellow-soldier, for which he had been rewarded with an oaken wreath, the civic crown. When the war broke out against the Volsci, Marcius by his bravery took the town of Coriöli. So the Romans called him Caius Marcius Coriolanus.

Now Coriolanus was a very proud Patrician, and was very angry when the Plebeians were allowed to have tribunes. And when a great famine arose, and corn was sent to the Senate by Greeks in Sicily, Coriolanus said, "If the people want corn let them give up their tribunes, and obey us as their fathers did" But

when the people heard of it they made a great tumult, and the Senate gave up Coriolanus to be judged by them. Then Coriolanus fled from Rome to the country of the Volsci, and led a great Volscian army against Rome, that he might take vengeance on the Plebeians. The Romans could not resist this invasion; and many a Latin town did Coriolanus take, till at last he encamped within five miles of Rome. Then the Romans tried to make peace, but the conditions which Coriolanus demanded were too hard. At last his mother Veturia and his wife Volumnia came out with a train of noble ladies to try to soften his heart. And when Coriolanus saw his mother and wife, at last he relented, and said, "O mother, thou hast won a great victory for Rome, but hast ruined thy son"; and he led away the army of the Volscians and never attacked Rome again. And he died in his old age a solitary exile among the Volscians; though some say that the Volscians in their anger put him to death.

(2) *Cincinnatus and the Æqui.*—In the year B.C. 458 the Æqui surrounded the Roman army on a mountain called *Algidus*, part of the Alban Mount. So great was the danger that the Romans determined to make dictator a great soldier, *Lucius Quinctius*, called *Cincinnātus* because of his curled hair. *Cincinnatus* did not care to live at Rome; he preferred to till his own farm on the other side of the Tiber. And when the senators came to tell him that he had been named dictator, they found him working in the

fields without his toga. So he sent his wife to fetch his toga, and, when he had put it on, he received the senators and accepted the post.

When Cincinnatus reached Rome, he stopped all business, and ordered that all men capable of bearing arms should assemble in the Campus Martius by sunset, with five days' provisions and twelve sharp stakes. Thus equipped the army started from Rome, and reached Mount Algidus by midnight. And Cincinnatus posted his men, without being seen, round the Æqui, and ordered them to plant their stakes and dig a ditch. Then they raised the war-cry, which the Æqui and their own comrades heard; and when the Æqui saw that they were caught, they fought fiercely for a long time, but at last they were compelled to surrender. And Cincinnatus made the whole Æquian army, with its general, go under "the yoke". This was a common sign of defeat among these old Italians. A yoke was formed by fixing two spears in the ground, and fastening one across; and the conquered soldiers were made to pass under it one by one, without their arms and armour. Then, having accomplished in six days that for which he was appointed, he resigned the dictatorship and returned to his farm.

(3) **The Fabii and the Etruscans.** — One of the greatest houses at Rome was the Patrician gens of the Fabii. So great was it that at this time nearly every year one of the consuls was a Fabius. One year the Plebeians would not fight

properly; for they were angry because the land had not been distributed according to the law of Spurius Cassius. Thereupon the consul Kæso Fabius tried to have the law carried out; this made the other Patricians very angry. Then the Fabii resolved to leave the quarrelsome city altogether. They asked the Senate to be allowed to go and fight alone against the Etruscans and prevent them from ravaging the Roman lands. The Senate consented; and Kæso Fabius, at the head of the whole gens, three hundred and six in number, marched out of Rome and encamped by the little stream of the Cremëra in Etruria. There for a long time they beat back the attacks of the whole Etruscan army, which tried in vain to dislodge them. Then they began to plunder the Etruscan territory; but after a time the Etruscans caught them in an ambush, and the three hundred and six Fabii were all killed fighting valiantly. And ever afterwards, in memory of this day, the gate by which the Fabii left Rome was called "the unlucky way". But one little boy had been left behind at Rome, for he was too young to fight; and from him sprang the Fabian house which in after time did many glorious deeds in the service of Rome.

**Continued Struggles between the Patricians and Plebeians.**—The stories of Spurius Cassius, Coriolanus, and of the Fabii show that even after the appointment of the tribunes the troubles continued at Rome. There was first of all the trouble about the land. But besides that the

Plebeians found that their tribunes could not always protect them. For at this time the Laws were unwritten, and the Patricians kept the knowledge of them to themselves, and so were often able to thwart the tribunes. In the year B.C. 462, therefore, a tribune proposed that the laws should be drawn up in writing and published in the Forum, so that every one might know them. This the Patricians refused, and so the struggle went on: the tribunes obstructing the work of government, and the Patricians replying with violence and illegal acts. At last it was agreed that ten men (*decemviri*) should be appointed to draw up the code of laws and govern instead of the consuls, and that the Plebeians should give up their tribunes. ✓

**The Decemvirate and the Laws of the Twelve Tables, B.C. 451-449.**—So the Decemvirs were appointed. They were all of them Patricians, but they did their work in a very just spirit. At the end of the year they had drawn up ten tables of laws, but their task was not ended; so a fresh body of Decemvirs was elected for the next year, under the presidency of a Patrician of the great Claudian gens, Appius Claudius. The work was completed by the addition of two more laws, and it was expected that the Decemvirs would resign. This they refused to do, and continued in office, carrying on the supreme government, and appearing in the Forum preceded by a hundred lictors bearing the fasces with the axes. They continued in this course even after their year of

office had expired, and at last were only driven out by force. How this came about is very doubtful; the story as told by the Roman historians runs thus :

**The Story of Appius Claudius and Virginia.**—


When Appius Claudius and the other Decemvirs refused to resign they made themselves so strong that no one dared to oppose them. But the people hated them, and the armies in the field warring against the Sabines and Aequi allowed themselves to be defeated, and the Decemvirs in revenge murdered a brave soldier, Siccius Dentatus, for complaining against their tyranny.

Meanwhile, Appius Claudius, who was governing at Rome, chanced to see a beautiful maiden named Virginia, and wished to get her into his power, so he made one of his freedmen swear that she was his slave. The case was tried before Appius himself; and Virginus, her father, who had been summoned from the camp, seeing that he could not save his daughter in any other way, stabbed her before the judgment-seat of Appius in the presence of all the people. A furious outbreak followed, the Decemvirs were forced to resign, and Appius Claudius died by his own hand in prison.

Such is the story of Appius Claudius and Virginia, but the Roman historian Livy tells us that Appius Claudius was elected the second time by the support of the *Plebeians*, and that he got several *Plebeians* elected also. So some people think that he set himself up as the champion of the *Plebeians* against the *Patricians*, and was driven out by the *Patricians*.



At any rate, after the overthrow of the Decemvirs the Plebeians again marched off to the Sacred Mount, and would not return until their tribunes had been restored. The laws, which the decemvirs had drawn up, were written on twelve brazen tablets (*tabulæ*), and set up in the Forum. They were called the Twelve Tables, and were the foundation of all Roman Law. Thus the Plebeians were in a safer position than ever; for the laws were now published, so that the Patrician magistrates could not do illegal acts; and at the same time they had their tribunes to pro-tect them.





## CHAPTER VI.

### *ROME TRIUMPHS OVER THE FOES ABROAD.*

	B.C.
The Canuleian Law, . . . . .	445
Institution of Consular Tribunes, . . . . .	445
Institution of Censors, . . . . .	448
Murder of Spurius Maelius, . . . . .	489
Beginning of Siege of Veii, . . . . .	406
Capture of Veii, . . . . .	896

**The Canuleian Law, B.C. 445.**—The *poorer* Plebeians had freed themselves from the unjust oppression of the Patricians. But now the struggles of the *rich* Plebeians began: they wanted two things, the right of being regarded as the equals of the Patricians and marrying with them, and the right of being elected to all the high offices of State. Their first object they attained at once; C. Canuleius, a tribune, proposed a law, which the Patricians could not prevent being passed, (that Patricians and Plebeians should be allowed to intermarry, and that the children of such a marriage should take the rank of the father.) For before, if a Patrician married a Plebeian wife, the marriage was not a legal one, and the children could not take their father's rank, but became Plebeians.

**The Institution of Consular Tribunes.—**

Their second object the Plebeians could not gain so easily. C. Canuleius proposed also that Plebeians might be elected consuls. This the Patricians would not allow, but they were obliged to make some concession. So they adopted a very strange device. They allowed a law to be passed that, instead of consuls, a number of magistrates might be elected from Patricians and Plebeians alike, with powers exactly like the consuls, who were called "military tribunes with consular power" (*tribuni militares consulari potestate*). These must be carefully distinguished from the tribunes of the Plebs. They were usually six in number. This law remained in force for eighty years, but it only said that consular tribunes *might* be elected, not that they must. It seems that it was the Senate which had to decide. So there was usually each year a furious wrangle on the question, and sometimes consuls, sometimes consular tribunes, were elected; and, strange to say, such was the position held by the Patricians owing to their long continued power, that, though the law was passed B.C. 445, no Plebeian was elected military tribune till B.C. 400.

**The Institution of Censors, B.C. 443.—**One of the duties of the consuls was to hold the census or register of the people, that is, make a list of them with all their property, arrange them in their classes, and fill up the vacancies in the Senate. This was done every five years. The Patricians did not like

such an important task, especially the filling up of the Senate, to be performed by consular tribunes who might be Plebeians. So they made two new magistrates called censors (*censōres*, which means *registrars*). The censors had the power of degrading from his proper class or from the Senate anyone who had been guilty of a disgraceful act, by putting a mark against his name, called the censor's mark (*nota censōria*), so they had a general superintendence over the public morals; and this is how in English the word "censure" has come to mean "find fault with". The censors were men of great dignity, usually of consular rank, that is to say, they had held the office of consul. Though elected for five years, they always resigned after a year and a half, for that was the time it took them to complete their work, and for the next three and a half years there were no censors.

**Spurius Mælius, B.C. 439.**—Four years after the institution of the censors there was again great distress among the Plebeians owing to a famine: such was their misery, that it is said numbers in despair threw themselves into the Tiber. So Spurius Mælius, a rich Plebeian, bought corn in Etruria and gave it to the starving people free. Thereupon the Patricians said that he was conspiring to make himself king, as they had said of Spurius Cassius (see p. 47). So the aged Cincinnatus was appointed dictator, and next day took his seat on his tribunal in the Forum, and sent Servilius Ahāla, his "master of the horse" (as the dictator's second in command was called), to bring

Spurius Mælius before him. Spurius Mælius was in the Forum at the time with a large crowd of Plebeians, who had come together in surprise at the appointment of a dictator: when summoned by Servilius he implored their aid. But Servilius stabbed him on the spot, and Cincinnatus said that Spurius Mælius was rightly slain for refusing to come before the dictator. But the people were so angry that Servilius was obliged to leave Rome.

**War with the Etruscans.**—The Romans were now getting the better of the Æqui and Volsci, and feared them no longer. They even felt strong enough to attack their old enemies the Etruscans, especially the neighbouring towns of Fidēnæ and Veii (B.C. 445). In a great battle the King of Fidēnæ was killed by the Roman general Cornelius Cossus with his own hand, who thus won the *spolia opīma* (see p. 24). Fidēnæ was taken and kept by the Romans. After many years' fighting peace was made B.C. 425. The great Etruscan nation was now growing weak. They had been beaten at sea by the Greeks of Syracuse (B.C. 474); then the Samnītes (see p. 7) drove them out of Campania (B.C. 424), and now the Gauls too were beginning to attack them in the North. So when the Romans began the war again and attacked Veii (B.C. 406) the other Etruscans left it to its fate.

**Siege of Veii, B.C. 406-396.**—Veii was a town in a very strong position, and its walls were as great in extent as those of Rome. So the Romans found it

very difficult to take. It was no use levying an army in the beginning of the summer to invade the Veientine land and then disbanding it in the autumn. The Veientes, secure in their fastness, laughed at them. So the Romans made two great camps on either side of the city and kept an army in them all the year round; but as the soldiers could not serve all the year for nothing, for then their families would starve, the State determined to give them pay. And this was how the Roman soldiers first came to receive pay.

But still the war went on for a long time with doubtful success. For the Veientes were still very strong and more than once destroyed the Roman camps; and in the south the Æqui and Volsci were still unsubdued, and took advantage of the Veientine war to renew their attacks. At last, after a war of ten years, the Romans, under a great soldier called Camillus, took Veii and utterly destroyed it.

**The Story of the Capture of Veii.**—The Roman historians tell the following story about the capture of Veii. There was great alarm at Rome in the eighth year of the siege of Veii, for the water of the Alban Lake, close by Alba Longa, overflowed. So the Romans sent to the great oracle at Delphi in Greece to ask what this marvel portended. But, meanwhile, at Veii a Roman soldier heard an old man on the city wall say, that, until the water of the Alban Lake had gone down, Veii would never be taken. Knowing that the Etruscans were skilled in prophecy, the soldier persuaded him to come

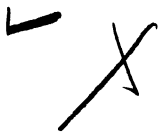
down and then seized him. The old man was carried to Rome and forced to repeat the prophecy, and when the messengers came back from Delphi they brought the same answer. Then the Romans let the water out of the lake by digging a great tunnel, the remains of which can be seen to this day. They also sent the great soldier Camillus to command the army besieging Veii. Camillus saw that the walls of the city were too strong to be taken by storm, so he dug a tunnel under the town right into the citadel. Then, when all was ready, all the people of Rome came to Veii to share in the plunder, and Camillus led his storming party into the tunnel.

Now it happened that just at this moment the high priest of Veii was sacrificing to Juno, and Camillus heard him say to the king that the victory would belong to whosoever should offer the sacrifice. Then Camillus burst out of the tunnel and slew the priest and offered the sacrifice himself. Thus, after a ten years' siege, Veii was taken.

**Conquest of South Etruria.**—After the capture of Veii the Romans continued the war against the Etruscans, and Camillus who had now been elected consular tribune, attacked the town of Falerii some miles north of Veii. It is said, that during this siege, a schoolmaster at Falerii, who taught the sons of the leading citizens, while taking them for a walk, one day led them all into the Roman camp, thinking that he would thus get a great reward for betraying them. But Camillus, scorning to take such a mean advantage,

made the boys flog their schoolmaster, with his hands tied behind him, back into the city again. This act of generosity so pleased the people of Falerii that they surrendered their city to Camillus. Camillus took many other cities, so that Rome had now conquered all South Etruria up to the great Ciminian Forest, which no Roman army had yet crossed, and which formed a barrier keeping North Etruria from helping the South.

**The Plebs wish to settle at Veii—Exile of Camillus.**—After the fall of Veii there were disputes at Rome between the Patricians and Plebeians about the Veientine land, for the Plebeians considered that they were unfairly treated. It is said that the Plebeians wished to settle at Veii, which was now standing empty, but the Patricians would not let them. The Plebeians also were angry with Camillus because he made them give up a tenth of the spoils, saying that he had vowed it to Apollo; it is also said that he became very proud and overbearing on account of his victory, and that he was accused of keeping some of the spoils to himself. The end was, that Camillus was forced to go into exile and retired to the Latin town of Ardea.





## CHAPTER VII.

### *CAPTURE OF ROME BY THE GAULS—END OF THE STRIFE AT HOME.*

Capture of Rome by the Gauls, . . . . .	B.C. 390
Death of Marcus Manlius, . . . . .	388
<u>The Licinian Laws, . . . . .</u>	<u>367</u>

**Invasion of the Gauls, B.C. 390**—It seemed now as if Rome was going to triumph over all her enemies, but just at this moment a heavy blow struck her—a blow that would have utterly crushed most States. It will be remembered that while Rome was besieging Veii the Gauls were attacking Etruria in the North : there is an Etruscan tradition that the same day that Rome took Veii, their southern stronghold, the Gauls took Melpum, their northern one, the site of which is unknown. The Gauls did not settle in their conquests, but went on conquering and plundering further south till they came to Clusium ; there three Roman ambassadors, who had been sent to order the Gauls to retire, joined in the battle, and one of the Romans killed a Gaulish chief ; so the Gauls, to punish this breach of the law of nations, marched on Rome.

**Battle of the Allia.**—When the Romans heard that the Gauls were approaching they got together the largest army they could of themselves and their allies, including both the regular legions and also the inferior troops, who generally stayed at home to defend the city. The Gauls were advancing by the south bank of the Tiber, and the Romans posted themselves behind the Allia, a little stream which flows into the Tiber about twelve miles above Rome. Now this was the first time that Romans had ever seen barbarians, for all their wars had hitherto been against nations fighting in the same way as themselves, and they were utterly appalled by the terrific charge of the Gauls, who hurled themselves on them with wild yells, and slashed right and left with their huge broadswords just as the Highlanders used to attack the English. So the inferior troops who were assailed first and by the bravest warriors of the Gauls, were broken at once, and in their flight threw the good troops into disorder. In a moment the whole army was in headlong route, and the Gauls were among them slaughtering them like sheep. Some of the fugitives fled to Rome, others plunged into the Tiber, but very few succeeded in getting across. Those who escaped fled to Veii. The Gauls were too much astonished at their victory to pursue immediately.

**Capture of Rome, and Defence of the Capitol.**—When the remains of the army reached Rome it was evident that its numbers were too few to defend the whole circuit of the walls. It was there-

fore determined to abandon the city and hold only the Capitol. Those, therefore, who wished to fight retired to the Capitol ; the rest of the population took refuge in Veii, which was now standing empty, and other neighbouring towns. But some of the Patrician senators, too old to join in the defence of the Capitol, but unwilling to survive the disgrace of Rome, arrayed themselves in their official robes and took their seats at the entrance of their houses. On the third day after the battle the Gauls entered Rome, and when they came into the city they saw the old senators seated before their houses, and at first they thought that they were gods as they gazed on them in wonder, and one of the Gauls began to stroke the long white beard of a senator named Marcus Papirius ; but Papirius, in anger, struck him on the head with his ivory sceptre. Thereupon the Gaul slew Papirius, and then they fell upon the others and killed them.

Then the Gauls set to work to plunder and destroy the city, and at last they attacked the Capitol ; but it was too strong, and they were repulsed. So they determined to blockade it, till the garrison should be obliged to surrender from famine. Meanwhile they sent an army plundering and destroying through Latium and the surrounding country.

**Marcus Manlius saves the Capitol.**—After some months the Gauls made a second attack on the Capitol. The Romans outside had sent a messenger to the defenders, who succeeded in climbing the rock and getting in. But a Gaul saw him and marked his

path; and in the night a body of Gauls made their way up the same path in single file. But, just as they were at the top, the sacred geese in the temple of Juno heard them, and made such a cackling that a brave soldier named Marcus Manlius was awakened and rushed to the spot just in time to cut down the leading Gaul. Then the rest of the garrison was aroused, and the Capitol saved.

**The Gauls are bribed to depart.**—At last, after the blockade had continued eight months, the garrison could hold out no longer, so they agreed to pay the Gauls a large sum of money to go away; and the Gauls, who had heard tidings of dangers at home and were themselves suffering from famine and disease, agreed to go away for a thousand pounds' weight of gold. But when they were weighing the money the Romans complained that the weights were false; then Brennus, the Gaulish king, threw his sword in also, exclaiming, "*Vae Victis*" ("Woe to the Conquered"). At this very moment Camillus arrived with an army which he had been collecting, and fell upon the Gauls and utterly destroyed them.

This was the end of the siege, according to the Roman account. But there is no doubt that the Gauls really took the ransom and retired with it, and the victory of Camillus was invented afterwards to wipe out the disgrace of Rome being obliged to buy her safety with money.

**Rebuilding of Rome.**—When the Gauls had departed the Romans returned to rebuild the city,

and Camillus came back from exile. But the Plebeians again wished to settle at Veii, where many of them had built themselves houses, and there was much disputing about it ; but when the Senate was deliberating in the senate house a centurion chanced to be halting his men in the Forum, and the Senate heard him say, "Standard-bearer, plant your standard here ; this will be the best place to stop ;" and they hailed the words as an omen sent from heaven, and decided to stop at Rome. So the building began, and to help the poor people the Senate gave them roofing material and allowed them to cut wood and quarry stone on the public lands ; there was no plan, but everyone built where he liked, so the new streets were very narrow and crooked.

✓ **Result of the Invasion of the Gauls—End of the Wars with the Æqui and Volsci.**—Such was the end of the invasion of the Gauls, the most terrible danger that had hitherto threatened Rome. Most states would have succumbed altogether ; Rome merely bent before the whirlwind, and, when it had passed, rose again with undiminished strength. In fact, the invasion made her stronger than before. We have seen how the Etruscans were weakened by the attacks of the Gauls. The Æqui and Volsci also suffered severely. After this time they grew weaker and weaker ; from time to time they joined Rome's enemies, but gradually they disappeared.

**The Fate of Marcus Manlius, B.C. 383.**—You would have thought that the Romans would

have done great honour to the brave Marcus Manlius, the saviour of the Capitol. But on the contrary, they soon after put him to death. This is how it happened. The Plebeians had suffered severely from the invasion of the Gauls; their lands had been ravaged and their homes destroyed. And though the Senate gave them some aid in the work of rebuilding it proved insufficient, and numbers of them fell victims to the cruel law of debt. The tribunes could not help them; but at last Marcus Manlius saw a brave centurion, who had fought under him, dragged off to prison for debt. He paid the debt himself on the spot, and was so shocked by the sight that he sold the best part of his property, and vowed that he would never allow a fellow-citizen to be sold into slavery for debt.

So the Plebeians looked upon Manlius as their protector, and used to assemble in crowds at his house on the Capitol; and Manlius used to harangue them on their wrongs. Then the Patricians said that Manlius was trying to make himself king. The Plebeians themselves began to believe it, and two tribunes accused him before the assembly of the people; and when he pointed to the Capitol, which he had saved, they adjourned the trial, and the next day the assembly of the people was summoned in a place from which the Capitol was not visible. Manlius was condemned to death, and hurled from the Tarpeian Rock.

(Marcus Manlius, Spurius Mælius, and Spurius

Cassius (see pp. 57, 46) were all protectors of the Plebeians, and all three were put to death because the jealous Patricians said that they were trying to make themselves kings. It shows what a dread the Romans had of the name King.

**Further Wars against the Gauls.**—For some years after the burning of Rome the Gauls remained quiet; then they renewed their raids; and the annalists relate many glorious victories over them in their desire to wipe out the disgrace of the Allia. The great Camillus himself is said to have celebrated a triumph over them at the age of eighty. There are stories, too, of Gaulish champions, giants like Goliath, who challenged the Romans to single combat. On one occasion the challenge was accepted by Titus Manlius, a member of the same gens as Marcus Manlius; he slew the Gaul, and as a trophy took from his neck a golden collar or *torques*, whence he was called T. Manlius Torquatus. He afterwards became a famous Roman general.

On another occasion the Roman champion was a Marcus Valerius, and just before the combat a crow appeared and perched on his helmet, and when the combat began it kept flying at the face of the Gaul, so that Valerius was easily able to kill him. So the soldiers called him Marcus Valerius Corvus; he, too, became a great general. It was after this last combat that the Gauls were finally defeated by the son of the great Camillus; they were never again

a source of danger to Rome by themselves, but they more than once gave trouble as allies of her enemies.

**(The Licinian Laws—Struggle between Patricians and Plebeians.**—The long struggle between the Patricians and Plebeians was now approaching its end. The rich Plebeians, who had several times gained the military tribuneship, were now determined to force the Patricians to throw the consulship open to them. So they took up the cause of their poorer brethren, still suffering from the distress which Manlius had tried to relieve, and both together made a combined attack on the privileges of the Patricians. In the year B.C. 376 two tribunes of the Plebs, C. Licinius and L. Sextius, proposed a law decreeing—(1) that relief should be given to debtors; (2) that henceforth no man should hold more than 500 *jugera* (about 300 acres) of the public land, and that anyone who had more should give it up to be distributed among the poor; and (3) that in future there were to be consuls again instead of consular tribunes, and that one of the two consuls *must* be a Plebeian.)

**Camillus ends the Struggle, B.C. 367.**—The Patricians resisted these laws by every means in their power. For ten years the struggle went on; Licinius and Sextius, it is said, were so determined, that when the Senate would not pass the law they stopped all elections of magistrates by their veto. At last, B.C. 367, Camillus, who had been appointed dictator, advised the Senate to give in. The law was passed,



and Camillus, in commemoration of the event, consecrated a temple to Concord. Two years afterwards he died of a plague; so the last act of the great warrior was to heal the discord of the State. The Patricians, however, did not yield altogether. When they gave up the consulship they tried to keep the judicial power to themselves, by making a new magistrate, called *prætor*, to act as judge. But in thirty years the Plebeians won the prætorship also. Soon after the passing of the Licinian laws they had obtained the dictatorship and censorship; and in B.C. 300 the priesthoods, with a few exceptions, were thrown open to them, and the union of the orders was complete. ✓

**Result of the Licinian Laws.**—Few laws have ever made such a great and lasting change in a State as these laws did at Rome. First of all the poorer Plebeians were relieved from the debt that was crushing them, and were secured from the future prospect of debt by the plots of land distributed to them; so that from discontented citizens, ever expecting to be dragged off to prison, they became sturdy yeomen farmers, who proved the backbone of Rome in her long wars. Secondly, the admission of the Plebeians to the consulship, and afterwards to the other offices mentioned above, strengthened the Senate by bringing all the rich families on to its side. Henceforward, instead of the old nobility of the Patricians, there was gradually formed a new nobility made up of the Patricians and the powerful Plebeians. The difference between Patrician and Plebeian became only a dif-

ference of name ; the real difference was between the nobles or party of the Senate, and the people or Popular Party. But the Popular Party were nearly always contented to leave the government to the Senate, and the nobles of the Senate showed themselves worthy of the trust by governing firmly and wisely.

### **Rome ready for her career of Conquest.—**

Now that the bitter party strife was ended, and her old enemies were no longer dangerous, Rome was strong enough to begin her career of conquest, which you will read about in the following chapters. First she conquered Italy, by subduing (1) her old allies, the Latins, and (2) the Samnites and other Italians ; then she had to defend herself against two foreign assailants, (1) Pyrrhus and his Greeks, and (2) Carthage. Triumphant over these foes she easily conquered the other nations around the Mediterranean and established her great empire. How, after she became all-powerful abroad, party struggles at home began again, fiercer than ever, and how they were again ended, will be told later on.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### *FIRST SAMNITE WAR—REVOLT OF THE LATINS.*

	B.C.
First Samnite War, . . .	843-1
Latin War—Battle of Mount Vesuvius, . . .	840

**Discontent of the Latins.**—It will be remembered that about a hundred years before this time, when Rome was hard pressed by the Æqui and Volsci, she was saved by Spurius Cassius, who renewed the old alliance with the Latin League (p. 46). While the Æqui and Volsci were strong and dangerous this alliance remained firm, but as Rome gradually grew more powerful and the Æqui and Volsci grew weaker, it became less friendly. Rome was now stronger than the Latins, so she gradually began to manage the affairs of the League as she liked without giving them any voice, and was specially unfair in the division of the spoils of their common victories, keeping the larger share to herself. So after the invasion of the Gauls there were wars between Rome and the various Latin cities, such as Tibur, Prænestë, and Tusculum; and the Latins even aided their old enemies the Volsci in their last despairing struggles against Rome. Little is known about these wars; most of the towns seem to

have been reduced without much trouble. The end of them was that in the year B.C. 358 the old alliance between Rome and the Latins was renewed; but it was no longer an equal alliance; the Latins were fast becoming the subjects of Rome.

The Campanians ask the Romans for help against the Samnites.—It was lucky for Rome that she thus reduced the Latins, for soon afterwards she found herself at war with a new foe, the fierce Samnite mountaineers of the South of Italy, and the struggle which ensued proved to be the struggle for the headship of Italy. The cause of the war was as follows:—You were told (p. 58) how, in the year B.C. 423, these Samnites conquered the Etruscans in Campania and settled in the country. The sunny and soft climate of the Campanian plains wrought a great change in the invaders; they lost their old rude valour, and many of them married with the Greeks and Etruscans. So a new Campanian race grew up, which forgot its kinship with the Samnites of the mountains, regarding them only as savage marauders, for they continually suffered from their raids. At last a regular war broke out between the two peoples. The effeminate Campanians were not able to keep off the attacks of the Samnites, so in the year 343 B.C. they appealed to the Romans for assistance, and the Romans consented to help them.

**First Samnite War, B.C. 343-I.**—The army which the Romans sent into Campania drove the Samnites out, but the accounts are very confusing.

One story is that the Roman consul, Valerius Corvus, of whom you have already heard, was surrounded by the Samnites in a valley in Samnium; but an officer named Decius Mus scaled a very difficult height with some soldiers, and so, by distracting the attention of the enemy, enabled the army to escape; after that the consul conquered the Samnites in a great battle at Mount Gaurus in Campania.

Next year the Romans themselves could do nothing owing to a mutiny in the army, and the Campanians were obliged to rely on the help of the Latins alone. The Latins succeeded in beating back the Samnites, and were so much elated at this proof of their strength that their old discontent returned, and they determined no longer to submit to the arrogance of Rome. The Romans, seeing the storm that was brewing, made peace and alliance with the Samnites, who were only too glad to end the war, because they were also fighting with the Greek city of Tarentum in the South.

**The Demands of the Latins.**—Before having recourse to arms the Latins sent two ambassadors to Rome to state their demands. These were, that the Romans and Latins should become one nation under the name of Romans, with Rome for the capital, and that one-half of the Senate and one consul should be Latin. At this insulting demand the consul Manlius Torquātus, the slayer of the Gallic champion (see page 68), was seized with fury; he declared that if the Romans granted it, he would slay the very first Latin he saw in the senate house, and appealed to

Jupiter Capitolinus, in whose temple the Senate was then sitting, to avenge the insult. Annius, one of the Latin ambassadors, furious at the words of Manlius, mocked at the name of the god; but the next moment, as he was hurrying down the steps of the temple, a peal of thunder was heard, his foot slipped, and he struck his head against the bottom step, so that he died. Thus Jupiter avenged himself; and Manlius hailed Annius's fate as an omen of the downfall of the Latin nation.

**The Latin War, B.C. 340.**—So the war broke out. The Samnites were now on the side of Rome, the Campanians on the side of the Latins, who were also aided by Rome's old enemies the Volscians. The two Roman consuls, Manlius Torquatus and Decius Mus, whose exploit had won him the consulship, at once took the field, and by a roundabout march through the mountains joined the Samnites in Campania without passing through Latium. The hostile armies were soon encamped opposite each other near Mount Vesuvius.

**Story of Manlius Torquatus and his Son.**—Now the Romans and Latins spoke the same language, and fought with the same arms, and most of them were known to one another personally, so that the war was like a civil war; so the Roman commanders, wishing to prevent any intercourse between the two armies, strictly forbade all single combats. But young Manlius, the son of the consul, provoked by the taunts of Metius, the commander of the

Tusculans, fought with him and slew him. But when he brought the spoils in triumph, the consul said that he had been guilty of twofold disobedience, against his general and against his father, and ordered him off to execution. The soldiers were horror-struck, but the sentence was carried out: the "orders of Manlius" (*Manliana imperia*) became a proverb and were never forgotten. It was a long time before anyone ventured to disobey a Roman consul. ✓

✓ **Battle of Mount Vesuvius—Decius Mus sacrifices himself.**—The night before the battle a vision appeared to both the consuls, and told them that the general on one side and the army on the other were doomed to fall as victims to the gods below. So in the morning the two generals, T. Manlius Torquatus and P. Decius Mus, determined that whichever of them saw his wing giving way should devote himself to death, so that the whole Latin army might be destroyed. When the battle was joined, the Romans were opposed to the Latins, the Samnites to the Campanians. The fighting was most obstinate, but at last the wing of Decius Mus began to give way. Then Decius called for the Pontifex Maximus, who bade him wrap his toga round his head and repeat after him a solemn form of words. Having thus devoted himself for the safety of the Roman army, Decius Mus mounted his horse, rode into the thick of the fight, and was slain. Still the battle went on as fiercely as ever. But Manlius kept a body of men in reserve to the last, and then ordered them to charge ;

and the Latins, taken by surprise, broke into utter rout.

Thus the Latins were defeated at the battle of Mount Vesuvius, and the vision that appeared to the consuls came true.

The wreck of the Latin army retreated to Latium and abandoned all hope of holding Campania. The Romans and Samnites followed them, and won a second victory, easy but decisive, at Trifanum, the site of which is unknown. After this Manlius, the surviving consul, returned home and celebrated his triumph; but there were no rejoicings at it, for he was regarded with horror, especially by the younger men, as the murderer of his son.

**End of the Latin Revolt.** — The Latins and Campanians could fight no more, and gradually their towns were forced to surrender. The Romans took no cruel vengeance, having conquered in fair fight, they could afford to be generous. All they wanted was to prevent the Latins revolting again; this they did by making peace with each Latin town separately, and ordering them in future to have no dealings with one another but only with Rome; thus the Latin League came completely to an end. To most of the towns an inferior sort of Roman citizenship was given; they had the right of trading and marrying with the Romans, but not of voting in the comitia. But some of the more guilty lost part of their land and had Roman colonists settled among them. The result was that though a few individual



towns revolted from time to time, there was never again a general rising of the Latins. At the time of Rome's greatest danger, viz., in the war with Hannibal, it was the fidelity of her Latin allies that proved her salvation.

Rome was clever about her allies in these wars. After fighting against the Latins she had them for her allies in the first Samnite war; then with the help of the Samnites she conquered the Latins; and now she has the Latins again as faithful allies, ready for the final struggle with the Samnites.

**Colonies planted among the Volsci and Campanians.**—The Volsci and Campanians were treated in the same way as the Latins. Capua and the other towns became subject-allies of Rome. The nobles of Capua had remained loyal, and were rewarded with the full Roman citizenship. Rome now began to strengthen her southern frontier by sending colonies into the conquered territory. The most important colony was the strong town of Fregellæ in the Volscian territory on the river Liris, thus lying on the direct road from Samnium into Latium.

**Alarm of the Samnites.**—The Samnites were much alarmed at the way in which Rome was making herself stronger and stronger, and especially at the founding of Fregellæ. But they could do nothing at present owing to their war with Tarentum, for that war was turning out much more difficult than they expected. They thought that they could easily beat the unwarlike Tarentines; but the Tarentines ap

pealed for aid to Greece, and a great soldier—Alexander, King of Epirus, uncle of Alexander the Great—came to Italy, and won many victories over the Samnites. He wanted to found a great Greek empire in Italy, and might perhaps have succeeded, but he perished by the dagger of an assassin (B.C. 326). So the Samnites were freed from this great danger: they gave up the war against Tarentum and prepared for their struggle with Rome.

O.

## CHAPTER IX.

### *CONQUEST OF THE ITALIANS—SECOND AND THIRD SAMNITE WARS.*

	B.C.
Outbreak of Second Samnite War, . . . . .	326
The Caudine Forks, . . . . .	321
Battle of Lautülæ, . . . . .	316
First Battle of Lake Vadīmo, . . . . .	310
Papirius Cursor defeats the Samnites, . . . . .	309
Capture of Bovīānum—End of the War, . . . . .	305
Outbreak of Third Samnite War, . . . . .	299
Battle of Sentīnum, . . . . .	295
End of the War—Conquest of the Samnites, . . . . .	290
Hortensian Law, . . . . .	287
Second Battle of Lake Vadīmo—Conquest of the Etruscans, . . . . .	288

**Outbreak of the War, B.C. 326—Roman Successes.**—The war between Rome and the Samnites was not long in breaking out. A quarrel arose between the little Greek town of Palæopōlis, close to Naples, on the Campanian coast, and the Roman settlers in the neighbourhood. Palæopolis appealed to the Samnites, who seized the chance and put a garrison in the town. The Romans ordered them to withdraw the garrison; the Samnites refused, whereupon the Romans declared war. They at once began to besiege Palæopolis, and took it the next year. After this the war went on in

Campania, and on the Liris. There were not many pitched battles, for the fighting consisted mainly in attacks on the strong frontier towns held by the two combatants, but the Samnites could not take Fregellæ. The Romans also made an alliance with the Apulians and Lucanians in the south of Italy. Thus they could attack Samnium from two sides at once, and gained the strong town of Luceria in Apulia, on the eastern frontier of Samnium. At last, B.C. 322, the Romans gained such decided successes that the Samnite general, Brutūlus Papius, committed suicide, and the Samnites sued for peace, which the Romans refused to grant.

**The Caudine Forks, B.C. 321.**—The next year the Samnites gave the supreme command of their forces to a new general, C. Pontius. He spread a report that the whole Samnite army was besieging Luceria, whereupon the two Roman consuls, who were both commanding in Campania, determined to march at once to its relief. Now the shortest way from Campania to Luceria lay through the heart of Samnium, and Pontius calculated that the Romans, having been so successful lately, would prefer it to the long route round the north of Samnium. He therefore posted his army on the heights commanding a valley called the Caudine Forks, near the town of Caudium, by which the Romans would have to enter Samnium.

The plan completely succeeded; the Romans took the short route, and marched into the Caudine Forks. Suddenly the advanced guard found itself confronted

by a barricade which the Samnites had thrown up across the defile leading out of the valley ; and next, the defile in the rear and the heights around were discovered to be swarming with the enemy. All efforts to escape from this trap were unavailing, and next morning the Romans were obliged to throw themselves on the mercy of their conqueror.

**Pontius makes peace with the Consuls.**—The question now for Pontius was, how was he to make the best use of this great victory. The story is that he sent to his aged father for advice, and received the unexpected reply, "Let them all go free". Thinking there must be some mistake, Pontius sent a second messenger, but this time the answer was very different, "Kill them all". More perplexed than ever, Pontius asked for an explanation of these two contradictory answers. His father replied: "You have only two courses open to you—either to make them your friends by an act of overwhelming generosity, or to weaken them so that they can never be dangerous enemies". Pontius, however, preferred to try a middle course. He said that he would let the Roman legions go, but they must give up all their arms and pass under the yoke, and the Romans must make peace with the Samnites and give back the towns which they had conquered. These conditions were accepted by the consuls ; but Pontius, instead of keeping the whole army until they were properly ratified by the Senate, was content to exact an oath from the consuls and officers and keep six hundred knights as hostages.

**✓ Perfidy of the Romans.**—The result proved the wisdom of the advice given by Pontius' father. The news of the surrender of Caudium was received with shame and fury at Rome; the Senate refused to ratify it, and, to save itself from the charge of bad faith, sent as prisoners to Samnium the consuls and all the officers who had taken the oath. Pontius, however, refused to receive the prisoners. The Romans, he said, ought either to keep the treaty or restore the whole army to the position from which it had been set free. So ended the affair of Caudium, one of the greatest military disasters that ever befel the Romans, and also one of the greatest blots on their national honour.

Before the Romans could recover the Samnites took Luceria, and soon afterwards Fregellæ. Next year, the Roman historians say, Papirius Cursor retook Luceria, with the six hundred hostages and all the spoil of Caudium; but as the Romans are said to have again retaken Luceria six years later, the whole story seems to have been made up to wipe out the disgrace of Caudium, like the story of Camillus and the Gauls.

**Samnite Victory of Lautulæ, B.C. 315—Roman Victories.**—For some years there was no great battle; then, in B.C. 315, when the main Roman armies were elsewhere engaged, the Samnites burst into Campania and advanced along the coast against Latium. Q. Fabius Rullianus, appointed dictator, hurried with what troops he had to meet them, but at the

Pass of Lautūlæ, which led from Campania into Latium, he was defeated. The Samnites do not seem to have advanced further, but many towns in Campania fell into their hands.

Then the fortune of war changed, the Samnites were defeated and driven out of Campania; Fregellæ and the other towns were retaken in the course of the next two years, fresh colonies were planted, and the Romans were securer in Campania than ever.

**The Etruscans join the Samnites, B.C. 311—Conquest of Northern Etruria.**—At this point, luckily for the Samnites, the attention of the Romans was distracted by the outbreak of a war against the Etruscans, who attacked the frontier town of Sutrium, south of the Ciminian Forest. Fabius Rullianus (consul, B.C. 310) was sent against them; and, instead of attacking the army besieging Sutrium, he determined to strike a decisive blow by invading Northern Etruria, over the Ciminian Forest, which hitherto no Roman general had dared to cross. The Senate sent a message forbidding him, but when it reached him he was already across. His boldness was justified by success—near Lake Vadimo he won a decisive victory (B.C. 310); several of the Etruscan States submitted at once, the rest in the course of the next year. So Northern Etruria was conquered; and the whole of Etruria was now in the power of Rome.

**Papirius Cursor defeats the Samnites, B.C. 309.**—While Fabius was in Etruria the Samnites won a victory over his colleague, and the appointment of

a dictator was necessary. The Senate sent to Fabius and requested him to appoint Papirius Cursor, the greatest Roman general of the time. Fabius had had a bitter quarrel with Papirius when commanding under him in the early years of the war, and Papirius had tried to have him executed for insubordination ; but, setting his patriotism above his personal feelings, he did as he was requested. Papirius took the field with the army which had been raised to protect Rome when Fabius crossed the Ciminian Forest. The Samnites, on their side, made the most desperate efforts to secure the victory in the coming conflict ; one division took a solemn oath to conquer or die, and were distinguished by silvered shields, and had the post of honour on the right. But all was of no avail. Papirius won a complete victory ; the sacred band of Samnites died where they stood, and their silvered shields only served to decorate his triumph.

**Capture of Bovianum—End of the Second Samnite War, B.C. 305.**—For five more years the Samnites fought on with indomitable courage. The Umbrians, and Marsians, and other Sabellian tribes in the centre of Italy took up arms in their behalf, but were separately defeated. The Romans now carried the war into the heart of Samnium, which was ruthlessly ravaged ; and at last (B.C. 305) the two consuls joined their armies before Boviānum, the Samnite capital. A desperate battle ensued, in which one of the consuls was killed, but the Romans were victorious, and Boviānum was taken. Then at last



the Samnites and their allies were obliged to accept peace and leave Rome in possession of all the strongholds she had won. Rome had proved herself stronger than the Samnites, but it required another war before they were quite crushed.

### **Censorship of Appius Claudius, B.C. 312-307.**

—In the latter years of the war there was great excitement at Rome owing to the censorship of Appius Claudius, who was elected one of the censors (B.C. 312). He was a very able man, a descendant of Appius Claudius the decemvir, and seems to have taken the side of the Popular Party, for in filling up the vacancies in the Senate he enrolled many men who were not nobles, and in making out the list of citizens he gave the full citizenship to many freedmen (slaves freed by their masters) and foreigners. Finally, though he ought to have resigned at the end of eighteen months (see p. 57), as his colleague did, he persisted in keeping his office for the five years until the next censors came into office. Strange to say, no punishment was inflicted on Appius for his action, perhaps because there was no actual law about resigning.

**The "Aqua Appia" and "Via Appia," Roman Roads.**—The censorship of Appius Claudius was also famous for two great public works. One was the Aqua Appia, an aqueduct by which water was brought to Rome partly on massive arches from the Sabine hills. Many aqueducts were afterwards built in Italy after the example set by Appius; and the

ruins of these high arches on which water was carried for miles show us very plainly what wonderful builders the Romans were. His second great work was the still more famous Via Appia, the first of the great Roman roads. It ran from Rome by the coast to Capua, so that troops might easily be sent there to hold it against the Samnites. The Romans spent the years after the Second Samnite war in making other roads through the districts they had conquered, and planting colonies on them. These roads gradually spread over the whole of Italy as the Roman arms advanced, and made her hold over it secure ; so Rome owed a great deal to Appius Claudius, who made the first road.

**Third Samnite War, B.C. 299.** — Gauls, Etruscans, Umbrians, and Samnites, allied against Rome.—Six years after the end of the second Samnite war the struggle began again. The Etruscans were the first to rise, and such was their desire to throw off the yoke of Rome that they called in their old enemies, the Gauls, who had been peaceful for many years (B.C. 299). Next year war broke out between Rome and the Samnites, because the Samnites interfered with the Lucanian allies of Rome. The Umbrians soon joined the Samnites. Thus Rome had against her Gauls, Etruscans, Samnites, and Umbrians ; it was the last despairing struggle of the Italians against Rome ; they fought no longer for supremacy, but for freedom, for their very existence.

**The Italians march against Rome, B.C. 296.**  
—The first campaigns were indecisive ; then, B.C. 296,

the Samnite general, Gellius Egnatius, leaving a small force in Samnium, boldly marched away north into Etruria, joined the Gauls, Etruscans, and Umbrians, and advanced on Rome. Rome was in such danger, that for eighteen days all business was stopped ; the legions were recalled from Campania, fresh levies were raised, and the consul Appius Claudius was able to repel the attack. Next year Fabius Rullianus was elected consul, and by his own request his friend Decius Mus, son of the hero of the battle of Mount Vesuvius, was given him as his colleague.

The campaign opened badly for the Romans : a small force in Umbria was surprised and cut to pieces by the Gauls ; and the first news the consuls had of the disaster was the sight of Roman heads at the end of the lances of some Gaulish troopers.

Gellius Egnatius now prepared to march again on Rome, but at the critical moment he found himself deserted by the Etruscans, who, frightened by the advance of a small Roman force into Etruria, retired to defend their own country. Then Gellius Egnatius retreated over the Apennines to Sentinum a town in Umbria, and there the great battle which decided the fate of Italy was fought.

**Battle of Sentinum, B.C. 295.**—The day at first went against the Romans. The left wing under Decius Mus was thrown into confusion by the Gauls with their terrible scythe-chariots, which the Romans had never seen before ; while Fabius on the right was obstinately resisted by the Italians. Then Decius

Mus, remembering his father's self-sacrifice at Mount Vesuvius (see p. 76), in a similar way devoted himself to the gods below, rode into the thick of the fight, and was slain. The Romans, rallied by this noble deed, drove back the Gauls. Fabius had meanwhile overcome the resistance of the Samnites, and at last the victory was won. Gellius Egnatius was killed, the Gauls fled to their own country, and the Samnites retreated to Samnium to defend it as best they could.

### **End of the Third Samnite War, B.C. 290.**

—Next year the Etruscans made peace, and all hope of crushing Rome by an Italian alliance was gone. But still the Samnites would not give in: they heroically continued the unequal contest, and twice actually defeated the Romans; but it was a hopeless struggle, and in B.C. 290, from utter exhaustion, they were obliged to make peace, and become the subject allies of Rome. No cruel terms were exacted, but the Romans prolonged the Via Appia from Capua right through the heart of Samnium to Venusia, an important colony just founded in Apulia.

**Secession of the People to the Janiculum—Hortensian Law, B.C. 287.**—Three years after the conclusion of peace, the concord at Rome was for a time interrupted by an outbreak of the people (B.C. 287). During the long wars their farms must have suffered greatly owing to the absence of their owners with the army; and when peace came and there was much land to be distributed, they said that the nobles

took an unfair share. An agrarian law was passed giving each citizen seven jugĕra (about four and a half acres) of land, but still they were not satisfied; they seem also to have wanted more power; so they marched off in a body from Rome to the Janiculum. Then the Senate made Hortensius, a Plebeian noble, dictator; and a law was passed that the Assembly of the Plebeians (see page 45) should be able to pass laws proposed by the tribunes without the consent of the Senate.)

Henceforward new laws were usually brought before the Plebeian Assembly, which thus became the chief assembly of the people; and the Comitia Centuriata now had little else to do except to elect consuls and other important magistrates.

**Etruscan and Gallic Wars B.C. 285—Final Conquest of Etruria.**—Two years after the passing of the Hortensian law the Etruscans again rose, aided by a tribe of Gauls called Senĕnes, whose settlements were the most southerly of all the Gauls. In a battle at Arretium the Romans were signally defeated, and some ambassadors sent to the Gauls were ruthlessly put to death by the chief of the Senĕnes to atone for the death of his father in the battle. Then the Romans resolved to exact a terrible retribution. An army was sent which conquered the Senĕnes and exterminated the whole race; the men were killed, the women and children sold into slavery (B.C. 283).

Then another Gallic tribe called the Boii joined the Etruscans. The invading army got within forty miles of Rome, but in a great battle by Lake Vadimo,

which had already seen one Etruscan defeat (see p. 84) they were totally routed. Very few of the Boii escaped, and the Gauls made peace. This was the last of the many unsuccessful efforts of the Etruscans against Rome, the whole of Etruria was now completely conquered. The Etruscans had for a long time fallen from their ancient greatness; they had never been properly united or had fought with the determination shown by the Samnites, and they now disappear for ever as an independent people. ✓

## CHAPTER X.

### THE WAR WITH PYRRHUS.

	B.C.
Destruction of a Roman Squadron by the Tarentines, . . . . .	282
Battle of Heraclœa, . . . . .	280
Battle of Ascŭlum, . . . . .	279
Pyrrhus in Sicily, . . . . .	278-6
Battle of Beneventum, . . . . .	275
Pyrrhus killed at Argos, . . . . .	272

✓ **The Beginning of Rome's Foreign Wars.**—We have now reached a great landmark in Roman history—the first foreign war waged by Rome. Hitherto all Rome's struggles had been with the peoples of Italy. The other nations of the world had been so busy with their own affairs that they had left Italy almost wholly alone. They had no idea of the great nation that was silently growing up in their midst, and that was soon to overshadow them all. What the circumstances were that led to the first collision between Rome and a foreign foe we must now describe.

**Tarentum.**—Of all the Greek colonies of Magna Græcia the greatest was Tarentum, situated in the north corner of the Bay of Tarentum. It had a first-

rate harbour, and so had become a great commercial power. Its government was a democracy—that is, the power was in the hands of the people, who met together in the theatre to discuss and vote about their affairs. They were an enterprising and wealthy people; but, like the other Greeks of this time, had become too fond of pleasure and luxury, and shrank from the hardships and dangers of personal service in war. So, when attacked by the Italians, on more than one occasion they had sent over to ask Greek kings for aid. With Rome they had come into very little contact; but there was a treaty, when made we do not know, by which no Roman ship of war should pass the Lacinian promontory, the southern point of the Tarentine Gulf.

The Tarentines had been delighted to see the Romans and Samnites at war, and no doubt hoped that they would destroy one another. But now Rome was victorious and stronger than ever, and was actually beginning to interfere with the cities of Magna Græcia. The Tarentines, therefore, were getting very uneasy.

**The Destruction of the Roman Squadron and the Embassy to Tarentum.**—One day in the year B.C. 282, when the Tarentine people were in their theatre, watching the performance of plays at one of their great festivals, suddenly to their amazement they saw a small Roman squadron of ten ships approaching the harbour. Its purpose is not stated; probably it was putting in for shelter. Furious at



this violation of the treaty, the Tarentines rushed from the theatre, manned their ships, and fell unexpectedly upon the Romans, who were unprepared and too few in number to resist. The commander was killed, half the ships were sunk or taken, and the crews killed or sold into slavery. This news caused the greatest indignation at Rome. An embassy was instantly sent to demand reparation. The ambassadors were received by the Tarentine Assembly in the theatre; but when one of them, by name Postumius, began to make his speech, the Tarentines laughed at him for his bad pronounciation of Greek, and a drunken buffoon suddenly came up and befouled with dirt his white toga. At this the peals of laughter were still louder; but Postumius, holding up his befouled toga, said: "Laugh on now if you will. You will weep soon; for the stains on this toga will be washed out in your blood."

Then the Roman ambassadors returned to Rome, and war was at once declared.

**The Tarentines invite over Pyrrhus, King of Epirus.**—Thus the Tarentines found themselves at last at war with Rome. But alone they could not possibly hold their own, a single city against a powerful State. Nor was there any hope in their old enemies the Samnites: the alliance of the Tarentines was not enough to rouse them to another effort against Rome. So there was nothing to do but to turn to Greece. As they had summoned Alexander, King of Epirus, to help them against the Samnites, so now they sum-

moned his cousin and successor, Pyrrhus, to help them against Rome.

**Pyrrhus.**—Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, was a great soldier, and a man of noble and chivalrous character. He was related to Alexander the Great. He also claimed descent from Achilles, after whose son Pyrrhus he was named, and regarded himself as a new Achilles about to wage a new Trojan war.

The youth of Pyrrhus had been spent in troublous times. His father had been driven out of his kingdom, and Pyrrhus himself, then a mere infant, was with great difficulty hurried out of the country. Afterwards he succeeded in winning back by his sword the throne of his fathers. Then he raised a large army of 50,000, and drilled it after the Macedonian fashion; for he was ambitious to imitate the exploits of his kinsman, Alexander the Great, and to found a great empire in the West as Alexander had in the East. So when the Tarentines asked for aid against Rome, and declared that there were thousands of Italian infantry ready to join him, he was only too ready to grant their request.

While he was preparing his army he sent across to Tarentum his famous adviser, the statesman Kineas, and a general Milo with 3000 men; whereupon the Roman army which had been ravaging the country retreated to winter in Apulia. At last in midwinter he himself crossed with his army, bringing with him some elephants, which the Romans had never yet seen, and, after narrowly escaping shipwreck, landed

at Tarentum. Tarentum the pleasure-loving became a vast arsenal, and preparations were vigorously carried on to begin the war in the spring.

**Rome and Pyrrhus—The Legion and the Phalanx.**—Great was the contrast between the two combatants in this war. On one side was a well-knit self-governing nation, whose strength was the result of the growth of centuries, with a force of citizen soldiers, strong in numbers, but commanded by any man whom the people happened to have elected consul; on the other a prince who had won his throne by the sword with a small but highly trained army fighting under its own victorious general. Great too was the contrast between the methods of fighting. The legion was drawn up in companies arranged in three separate lines, one behind the other; the men were in loose order, and after hurling their javelin (pilum) fought with the sword; the Macedonian “phalanx” was a solid mass of soldiers, drawn up close together with their shields touching, sometimes twenty or thirty ranks deep; its weapon was a long spear, so long that the spear points of the first five ranks all projected in front of the first rank. On level ground the phalanx was invincible, but on rough ground the legion proved its superior.

**Battle of Heraclea, B.C. 280.**—The Romans under the consul Lævinus took the field early, and marched at once into Lucania to engage Pyrrhus before the Samnites could rise; but the latter had no intention of again attacking Rome before they saw how

fortune of war went; Pyrrhus was therefore obliged to fight with his own troops and the Tarentines only, so that his numbers were inferior to the Romans. The two armies met near Heraclēa, a town on the river Siris close to the Gulf of Tarentum. The river Siris ran between them. The Romans succeeded in forcing the passage of the river and a fierce battle ensued. Pyrrhus himself was in great danger, so eagerly was his life sought by the Roman horsemen; at last he changed armour with one of his officers named Megacles; Megacles paid for this honour with his life, and the armour was triumphantly paraded through the Roman lines; then Pyrrhus rode bare-headed before his troops to shew that he was alive. Meanwhile the battle was fiercely contested; seven times, it is said, the two armies closed in the deadly strife and retreated again without advantage to either, till at last Pyrrhus ordered his elephants to charge. Then the Romans, unaccustomed to fight such monsters, broke and fled; they could not even hold their camp but retreated to Apulia.

This victory gave Pyrrhus the whole of South Italy. The Samnites and Lucanians at last joined him, but not in the numbers he expected. His own loss was very great, and the sight of the Roman dead with their wounds all in front made a deep impression on him. "Were these my soldiers," he said, "and I their general, I would conquer the whole world."

✓ The Embassy of Kineas to Rome and  
✓ Speech of Appius Claudius.—So Pyrrhus deter-

mined to try to make peace. He sent Kineas to offer the Romans alliance if they would leave Tarentum and the other Greek towns independent, and restore to the Samnites and the other Italians all the towns which they had taken. Now Kineas was a wonderfully clever man; so persuasively could he talk that it is said that his tongue won more cities than the sword of Pyrrhus; and he had such a retentive memory that after one day he could address all the great men at Rome by name. The simple Roman senators succumbed to the magic charm, and were already discussing the peace, when Appius Claudius, the famous censor, now a blind old man, was led into the senate house by his sons, and in a powerful speech rebuked them for their weakness. The words of blind old Appius broke the charm. The offers of Pyrrhus were rejected; and ever afterwards it was a Roman maxim never to make peace with an enemy on Roman soil. Kineas was ordered to leave the city the next day, and returned to Pyrrhus astonished at what he had seen at Rome. "Rome," he said, "is a Temple, the Senate is an assembly of Kings."

**Pyrrhus advances on Rome.**—Meanwhile Pyrrhus, with his army of Greeks and Italians, had advanced into Campania, ravaging and burning; but neither Capua nor any other city would open its gates. From Campania he pushed on into Latium, still ravaging, and actually reached the town of Praeneste, only twenty miles from Rome. But the Latins remained faithful; not a city would receive him; so

at last, afraid of advancing further in a hostile country where defeat would have been ruin, he retreated to Tarentum, and the campaign ended.

**The Embassy of Fabricius.**—Then the Romans sent an embassy to Pyrrhus to ask for an exchange of prisoners. This Pyrrhus would not grant except on the conditions which he had already offered. It is said he tried in every way, by his winning manners and even by bribes, to gain over Fabricius, the chief of the ambassadors. Finally he tried to frighten him : one day, when he was having an audience with the king, a curtain behind him was suddenly drawn back and the trunk and tusks of a huge elephant appeared, which began trumpeting loudly just over the head of the astonished ambassador. But his Roman fortitude stood the test ; he was neither to be tempted nor frightened. Finally so desirous was Pyrrhus of gaining the friendship of the Romans, that he allowed all his prisoners to return to Rome with Fabricius to celebrate the Saturnalia (a festival in honour of the god Saturn at the end of December, celebrated as a general holiday), on the understanding that they would return if peace were not made, which promise was strictly kept, the Senate threatening death to any who broke it.

**Battle of Asculum, B.C. 279.**—Next year the armies met near Asculum, in Apulia. There were two consular armies opposed to Pyrrhus, but the Romans were less successful against the phalanx than at Heraclea ; they tried in vain to cut their way

through the bristling line of pikes, and when at last exhausted, were charged by the elephants, and driven in rout to their camp. But the victory was even more barren in results than Heracleā; this year Pyrrhus did not dare to invade Latium.

**Pyrrhus goes to Sicily, B.C. 278-6.**—The next year Rome was relieved of the presence of Pyrrhus altogether, for he went over to Sicily to help the Greeks there against the Carthaginians, their hereditary enemies, and left the Tarentines and Samnites to shift for themselves. In Sicily Pyrrhus was, as usual, victorious at first, and almost swept the island of the Carthaginians. But he could not take the impregnable seaport Lilybæum, on the western corner of the island; dissensions broke out between him and the Greeks, and he returned disappointed to Italy (B.C. 276), after an absence of two years, during which the Romans had reconquered all the south of Italy except Tarentum, held by Milo.

**Battle of Beneventum, B.C. 275.**—In B.C. 275 the combatants met for the third time; but Pyrrhus' troops were no longer the veterans of Epirus, but mercenaries raised in Sicily. Curius Dentātus, the Roman consul, lay in a strong position in the hill country of Samnium, near Beneventum. Pyrrhus tried to surprise him by a roundabout night march, which only resulted in confusion and repulse. Then Dentatus left the hills and attacked Pyrrhus on level ground. At first the phalanx was as invincible as ever, but finally it was thrown into confusion by the elephants

which were driven back on to it by the darts of the Romans, and so was easily routed. The Roman victory was complete; the legion had proved its superiority over the phalanx. Dentatus was rewarded with a magnificent triumph, the first over a foreign foe, in which the captured elephants followed the procession, a novel sight for the populace of Rome.

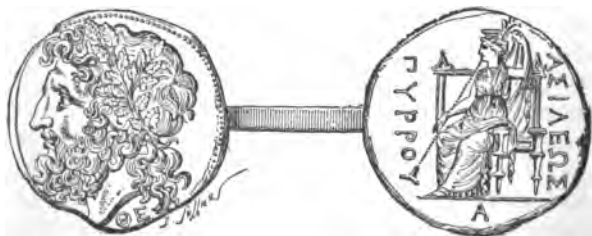
**Pyrrhus returns to Epirus—His End.**—Pyrrhus, leaving a small garrison under Milo in Tarentum, returned to Epirus. The stubborn resistance of Rome had shattered his dreams of a western empire; but in the troubled state of Greece he found plenty of work for his sword. Victories he won as in Italy and Sicily, but he gained no lasting success, and a few years afterwards, in an attack upon the city of Argos (B.C. 272), he perished miserably, struck by a tile thrown by the hand of a woman. Such was the end of the brilliant soldier-king of Epirus in the forty-sixth year of his age.

**Italy after the War with Pyrrhus.**—After the departure of Pyrrhus, all Italy lay at the mercy of Rome. The garrison in Tarentum was at once besieged, and after four years Milo, finding the townspeople almost as hostile as the Romans, agreed to surrender on condition of being allowed to retire unmolested to Epirus. Then the walls of the once proud city were destroyed, its fleet carried off, and the inhabitants allowed to dwell in peace as the humble allies of Rome; the days of the greatness of Tarentum were gone for ever.



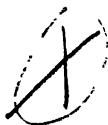
**Italy secured by Roads and Colonies.**—The Samnites and the other Italian allies of Pyrrhus suffered a similar fate. Tribe after tribe they were gradually compelled to make their submission. No cruel vengeance was taken, but as a punishment they were obliged to give up a great deal of land, and they were not allowed to exist any more as nations ; each town was separately made a subject ally of Rome, bound to furnish money and men. The conquered districts were secured in the usual way by roads and by planting colonies of Latins and Romans. The most important new colony was Beneventum, in the heart of Samnium, the scene of the crowning victory against Pyrrhus, and the Via Appia (see page 89) was continued from Venusia to Tarentum.

**Prosperity of Rome.**—The land taken from the Italians was distributed among the poorer Roman citizens ; and so Rome became richer and more powerful than ever. A silver coinage was introduced, and more magistrates appointed to carry on the increased



COIN OF PYRRHUS.

work of government. The years after the war with Pyrrhus were among the most prosperous that Rome ever enjoyed. By her victory over her first foreign foe she had proved her right to be mistress of Italy, and, after centuries of struggle, had taken her place among the nations of the world. But she had only a short breathing-space allowed her; within ten years she found herself in collision with a new and more powerful foreign foe, the mighty republic of Carthage. ✓



## CHAPTER XI.

### *CARTHAGE.*

**The Phœnicians.**—We must now go back more than one thousand years, long before the year when Rome was supposed to have been founded. In those days one of the greatest nations was the Phœnician. The Phœnicians were great sailors and merchants; their home was on the eastern coast of the Mediterranean in the cities of Tyre and Sidon. The Phœnicians were not of the same race as the Romans and Greeks and other nations that we have heard about; they were of the Semitic family of races to which the Jews and Arabs belong. You will remember how Hiram, King of Tyre, was a friend and ally of Solomon, helping him in the building of the temple, and allowing him to share in the wealth gained by his fleets in their voyages to Tarshish (*i.e.*, Tartessus in Spain) and other places. Like other commercial nations, ourselves, for instance, and the Greeks, the Phœnicians were not content merely to send their fleets to these distant lands, they also sent settlers to found colonies along their coasts and trade with the natives. These colonies soon grew rich and powerful, and in time became independent of the mother country. The

most powerful of them was called Carthage, situated on the north-east corner of that part of Africa now called Tunis.

**The Story of Dido and the Foundation of Carthage.**—A famous old story tells how Queen Dido, driven from Tyre after the death of her husband, King Sychæus, landed in Africa at the head of a band of exiles, and purchased from the native princes as much land as an oxhide would cover. But she deceived the simple Africans by cutting the oxhide into thin strips, which she laid *round* as much land as she could, and so obtained enough to found a city on. This city she called Byrsa, which means an oxhide, and ever afterwards Byrsa was the name of the citadel of Carthage. There, the Roman poet Virgil tells us, she was visited by Ænêas on his way from the ruins of Troy to found the new home of his race. Æneas was smitten with love for Dido, and was beloved by her in return; but being warned by the gods that his new home was to be in Italy, not Africa, he basely deserted her. Thereupon Dido slew herself, having first prophesied that in the years to come her descendants would wreak a terrible vengeance on those of Æneas. What that vengeance was we shall soon see.

**The Empire of Carthage.**—This story, like the early stories of Rome, is but legend. All we know is that Carthage grew to be a mighty city of merchant princes, supreme over all the other Phœnician colonies, just as Rome was supreme over the Latins.

Carthage also conquered and ruled over the native Africans around her, who were called Libyans, and made alliance with the fierce but fickle nomads of the desert, the Numidians, whose princes she tried to keep friendly by presents and giving them the daughters of her nobles in marriage. Then Carthage herself began to send out colonies along the African coast, then to Spain, the islands of the Mediterranean, and lastly to Sicily. But in Sicily the proud city met its match; for long before Carthage began to found its colonies, Panormus, and others in the west of the island, Greece had sent its settlers to the east and founded Syracuse, Agrigentum, and many other towns. The Carthaginians could not turn the Greeks out of Sicily, and for a long time the Greeks held the eastern part of the island, the Carthaginians the western, and fought many fierce wars with varying success. But by this time the Greeks of Sicily, like their kinsmen in Italy and Greece itself, had degenerated and lost their ancient greatness; and the Carthaginians had gained nearly the whole of the island, when Pyrrhus made his brilliant but unavailing attempt to drive them out. After his departure (B.C. 276), only Syracuse and a few towns on the east coast remained independent.

**Government of Carthage.**—Carthage was, like Rome, a republic; there was a governing body like the Senate, two chief magistrates (called *suffètes* by the Roman historians, probably the same name as *shofetim*, the Hebrew “Judges”), and other inferior magistrates; and a popular assembly, which had not

much to do except to elect the magistrates. But the suffètes were only civil magistrates, they did not command the armies like the Roman consuls. The Carthaginians used to appoint their best soldiers as generals, and leave a general many years in command if successful, and even allow him to hand down the command in his own family. This, you will see, gave the Carthaginians a great advantage.

**Character of the Carthaginians.**—Carthage was the undisputed mistress of the Mediterranean; her fleet had no rival and her merchantmen sailed in every direction, bartering her wares with the natives of the different countries; so she was wealthy, far wealthier than Rome, on whom she looked with contempt. But their wealth made the Carthaginians proud and unwarlike; they thought of nothing but making money, and hired mercenaries to fight their battles, and bought slaves to till their fields; and they oppressed their subjects in Africa, and made themselves hated by them, so that when an invader landed in Africa they were ready to join him at once.

What a contrast to the Romans: who worked on their own farms and fought their own battles; and who treated the conquered Latins so wisely that they remained loyal to her through far greater disasters than Carthage suffered. But the Carthaginians, though preferring money-making to fighting, were no cowards; we shall see that in the last hours of their country, when driven to bay and fighting for their very existence, they all, men and women alike, displayed a

heroism only equalled by that of their kinsmen, the Jews, in their last struggle against Rome.

As Rome was now mistress of Italy, and Carthage mistress of nearly all Sicily, they were at last neighbours; if the Romans did not drive the Carthaginians out of Sicily, the Carthaginians would probably invade Italy and stir up the conquered Italians against Rome. So it was plain that a war must soon break out between the two nations; and the war was the commencement of a struggle for the empire of the world, which was not finally ended till nearly one hundred and twenty years had elapsed. The struggle consisted of three wars, which are called by the Roman historians the Punic Wars: for *Punicus* was a Latin word meaning Phœnician.





## CHAPTER XII.

### *FIRST PUNIC WAR.*

	B.C.
First Punic War, . . . . .	264-241
Outbreak of the War, . . . . .	264
The Romans take Agrigentum, . . . . .	262
Battle of Mylæ, . . . . .	260
Battle of Ecnōmus—Invasion of Africa, . . . . .	256
Defeat of Regulus, . . . . .	255
Battle of Panormus, . . . . .	251
Beginning of the Siege of Lilybæum, . . . . .	250
Battle of Drepanum . . . . .	249
Hamilcar Barca goes to Sicily, . . . . .	247
Battle of the Ægæan Islands—Carthage makes peace, . . . . .	242

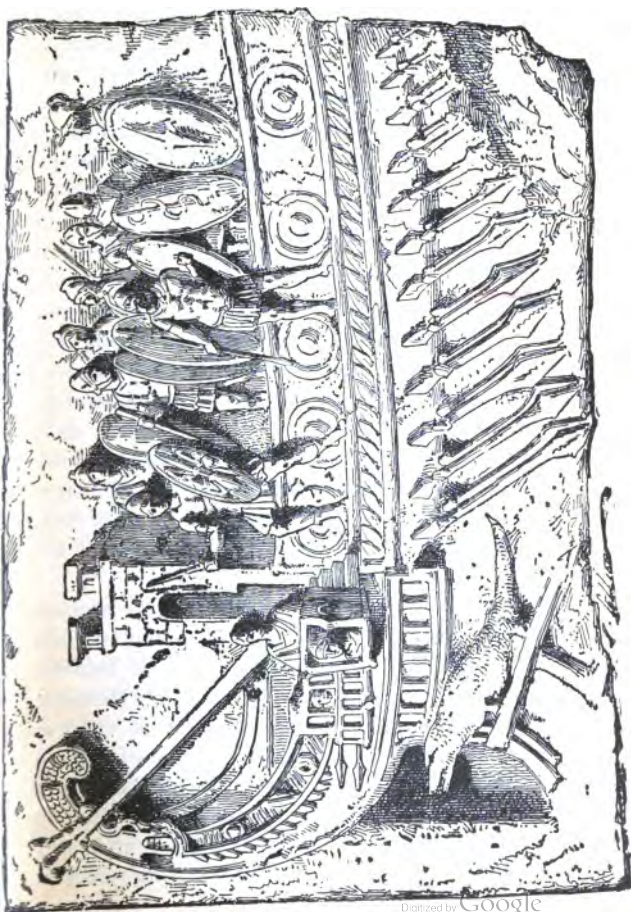
✓ **Outbreak of the First Punic War, B.C. 264**  
**—The Mamertines.**—The first of the three wars between Rome and Carthage began in the following way. Before the war between Rome and Pyrrhus some Campanian mercenaries, who had been in the service of Syracuse, when returning to their homes treacherously seized the town of Messāna, murdered the inhabitants, and established themselves there, calling themselves Mamertini, or sons of Mamers (another name of Mars). After the defeat of Pyrrhus they were attacked by Hiero, the young King of Syracuse, and appealed for aid to Rome, but



meantime admitted a Carthaginian garrison. The Romans, after much deliberation, determined to help the Mamertines, to prevent a town so near Italy falling into the hands of Carthage. They sent some troops, who succeeded in crossing the straits (B.C. 264); Hanno, the Carthaginian commander in *Mes-sāna*, was invited by their commander to a conference and then treacherously seized, whereupon, to secure his own release, he agreed to give up the town to the Romans.

**Capture of Agrigentum and other Sicilian Towns, B.C. 262.**—So began the first Punic war. The Carthaginians were quite unprepared; town after town in Sicily fell before the Roman armies, and Hiero, who had at first taken the Carthaginian side owing to his desire to conquer the Mamertines, quickly saw his mistake, and made an alliance with Rome, to which he remained faithful till his death, fifty years afterwards. In B.C. 262 the Romans took Agrigentum, the second city of the island; but now the Carthaginian fleet appeared, and by its aid the Carthaginians recovered many coast towns of Sicily, and even ravaged the coasts of Italy. It was plain to the Romans that if they were to conquer Carthage they must fight her by sea.

**The Romans Build a Fleet, B.C. 260—The Drawbridges.**—The Romans had already a few ships, but the largest were only *trirēmes* (*i.e.*, ships with three banks of oars), while the great Carthaginian fleet was composed of *quinquēremes* (ships with



ROMAN WARSHIP.

five banks). Nothing daunted, however, the Romans set to work in the year B.C. 260 to build a fleet of quinqueremes, taking as a model a Carthaginian vessel that had been wrecked on their coast. Such was their energy that within sixty days after the timber was felled the fleet is said to have been ready for sea; the crews had been taught to row on scaffolding set up on shore.

Still the Romans felt that they would have little chance against the well trained sailors of Carthage; but they knew that their soldiers were better. So they invented a machine by which they would bring the Carthaginian vessels to close quarters, and then the battle would be between the soldiers. This was a sort of drawbridge with a long iron spike underneath at the end, which was to be let down directly an enemy's ship came alongside. The iron spike would go into the deck and hold the ship fast; the soldiers would pour on board, and the skill of the Carthaginian sailors would be of no avail.

**Battle of Mylæ.**—Equipped with this strange engine, the newly-built Roman fleet put to sea in the spring of B.C. 260, under the consul Duilius. Off the town of Mylæ, not far from Messina, they met the enemy, who were confident of victory. But the drawbridges took them by surprise; unable to make any use of their naval skill the Carthaginians were utterly defeated, and fifty of their ships taken or sunk. Duilius was granted a magnificent triumph, and to commemorate his victory a column was erected

in the Forum adorned with the rostra or beaks of the captured warships called the Columna Rostrata. Thus the Romans were victorious in their first great sea-fight, and might now hope to conquer Carthage. But for the next three years there was nothing decisive either by land or sea.

**Expedition of Regulus—Battle of Ecnomus, B.C. 256.**—In the year 256 B.C. the Romans determined to carry the war into Africa. They fitted out an enormous fleet of 330 ships, and embarked on it two consular armies, over 40,000 troops, under the consuls Regulus and Manlius Volso. Off the promontory of Ecnomus, on the south coast of Sicily, they found their way barred by a fleet said to have consisted of 350 ships. Again the boarding bridges gave the victory to the Romans; they lost twenty-four ships, but sunk thirty and took sixty-four.

After putting back to Messana to repair their losses, the Roman armada succeeded in landing on Carthaginian soil, and occupied a small coast fortress called Clypea, about fifty miles east of Carthage, in the midst of the fairest and most fertile part of its territory. The Carthaginians, trusting in their fleet, had made no preparations to resist an invasion; so the villas and gardens and vineyards were unmercifully plundered by the Roman legions. 20,000 prisoners were taken. The Africans, in their hatred of Carthage, began to join the Romans, and all seemed easy. The consul Manlius was recalled by the Senate with his fleet and the plunder. Regulus remained behind, defeated the

forces which the Carthaginians had managed to collect, and then took up his winter quarters at Tunis, close to Carthage itself.

When his consulship was over, he was made by the Assembly of the People a pro-consul, that is, a general acting for a consul (pro consule). For several years the Romans had adopted the practice of making pro-consuls; for their territory was growing so large that they often had more than two armies in the field; besides it was most inconvenient to change every year the general of an army fighting far away in a distant land.

**Defeat and Capture of Regulus, B.C. 255.—**The Carthaginians now wished to make peace, but Regulus, whose head was turned with success, demanded most extravagant terms; and when the ambassadors would not accept them, he insulted them, and drove them out of his camp. The Carthaginians were then in great distress, but determined to resist. Like the Moabites and the Israelites in their times of idolatry, they gave up their children to the flames to appease the cruel fire-god Moloch.

But though Moloch could not help them, other aid came. A Spartan soldier of fortune named Xanthippus arrived. He, with a true soldier's eye, saw that, with their cavalry and elephants properly handled, the Carthaginians would be more than a match for the Romans. He was put in command, and next spring marched against Regulus, who, all unprepared, was obliged to fight at a great disadvantage. The

cavalry and elephants did their work ; the Romans were routed with a terrible slaughter ; thousands were slain on the field ; five hundred, including Regulus himself, were made prisoners, and the shattered remnant escaped to Clypea. Thus, by the overbearing self-confidence of Regulus, the African expedition ended in utter disaster.

**Roman Fleets wrecked.**—As soon as they heard of the defeat in Africa, the Romans sent out a fleet to carry off the survivors, (who were being besieged in Clypea. It accomplished its object after a victory over the Carthaginian fleet ; but on the return voyage the consuls would not listen to the warnings of the pilots, and so the fleet was caught by a storm off the south coast of Sicily and dashed to pieces on the rocks, nearly everyone on board perishing.

Two years afterwards another fleet was wrecked, and the Romans in despair gave up trying to fight by sea. Nor were they any more successful on land. They succeeded indeed, in taking the great fortress of Panormus ; but then the Carthaginians sent to Sicily more than one hundred of the dreaded elephants that had routed the army of Regulus, and the Romans dared not face them again ; so they could undertake nothing in Sicily, and for some years the war dragged on without any particular events. |

**The Battle of Panormus, B.C. 251.**—At length the Carthaginians took the offensive and marched with all their elephants against Panormus, where the Roman proconsul Metellus was in command.

Metellus allowed the enemy to approach the walls, and then, keeping the legions within the gates, attacked the elephants with his light troops, who so infuriated them by their showers of missiles that they became unmanageable and rushed back on their own infantry, trampling them down on all sides. Then Metellus poured his legions through the gates on the disordered ranks of the enemy, and the rout was complete. Many prisoners were taken, including thirteen Carthaginians of noble rank, and a hundred elephants were captured.

**Embassy of Regulus.**—Then the Carthaginians, wishing to recover the nobles who had been taken at Panormus, sent over an embassy to propose an exchange of prisoners, accompanied by the unhappy Regulus. But Regulus atoned for his previous errors by a noble act of patriotic self-sacrifice, the memory of which will never die. He made a speech to the Senate, in which he persuaded them not to agree to the Carthaginian offer; and then, according to a promise he had made, in spite of the tears and entreaties of his family and friends, he calmly went back to Carthage. There he soon after died. The Roman story says that he was put to death by the Carthaginians with most cruel tortures; but there is reason to suppose that this story was made up afterwards by the annalists.

**The Siege of Lilybæum, B.C. 250-241.**—The Romans now determined to drive the Carthaginians altogether out of Sicily. Their only strongholds left were Lilybæum, which had previously baffled

Pyrrhus (see page 100) and Drepanum, close beside it. After an unsuccessful attempt to take Lilybæum by force, in which their siege-works were burnt by the enemy, the Romans determined to blockade it. But to do this it was necessary to send out a fleet again, and conquer the Carthaginians by sea, to prevent them bringing supplies into the town.

**Battle of Drepanum, B.C. 249.**—So in the next year (B.C. 249) the consul P. Claudius, who commanded the fleet, son of the old censor, attacked the Carthaginian fleet lying in the harbour of Drepanum, and was totally defeated, with a loss of ninety ships and 20,000 prisoners.

It is said that before the battle Claudius was told by the Augur that the sacred chickens would not eat—a very bad omen. “Then they shall drink,” exclaimed the consul, and threw them into the sea. He was afterwards tried for impiety, but the trial was stopped by a thunder-storm. After his death his sister, finding her litter stopped one day in the Forum by the crowd of people, said, “I wish my brother was alive to lose another battle and clear the streets a little,” for which speech she was heavily fined. Such was the character of the haughty Claudian gens.

The same year as Drepanum, another disaster befell the Romans; another fleet, under the other consul, that was carrying stores to Sicily, was totally wrecked, while the Carthaginians, who were watching it, by superior seamanship escaped to a place of refuge.



Utterly discouraged by these two blows, the Romans determined, a second time, to give up the sea. There was now no hope of taking Lilybæum; all they could do was to blockade the Carthaginians there and in Drepanum, and prevent them overrunning Sicily.

**Hamilcar Barca in Sicily, B.C. 247-242.**—But in the year B.C. 247 a new general, Hamilcar Barca, whose family name Barca is the same as the Jewish Barak (Judges IV.), and means “lightning,” was sent out from Carthage as commander-in-chief to Sicily. Hamilcar knew that his mercenaries could not face the Roman legions in pitched battles, so he determined to harass and tire out the Romans by raids and skirmishes. In this he was most successful. First of all he established himself on a mountain near Panormus, close to the sea, whence he mercilessly ravaged the coasts of Sicily and Italy, often penetrating several miles inland. Then he surprised the town of Eryx, close to Drepanum, and established himself there, watching the Roman camps before Drepanum and Lilybæum, continually engaging them and defying all their efforts to crush him. So the war dragged on year after year. The Roman treasury was failing, the number of her citizens decreasing, her trade being ruined, and yet the end seemed no nearer.

**The Romans build a new fleet—The Battle of the Ægatian Islands, B.C. 242.**—At last, in the year B.C. 242, the Romans built a fresh fleet, but so poor was the public treasury that the Senate was obliged to call upon the rich citizens to furnish

the money, and the call was nobly responded to. Fortunately for the Romans, the Carthaginians had since their last successes neglected their fleet; so the consul Lutatius Catulus, when he arrived before Drepanum, found himself unopposed, and had time to thoroughly train his crews. The Carthaginians, taken by surprise, hastily prepared a fleet; but their raw crews were no match for the well-trained seamen of Lutatius. Near the *Ægatian* islands, off Drepanum, the battle was fought, and the heroic efforts of the Romans crowned with success.

Now that the Romans had command of the sea, it was useless for the Carthaginians to continue the war, as Lilybæum and Drepanum would soon be starved out. So Hamilcar was ordered to treat for peace, which was soon arranged. Carthage was to give up her possessions in Sicily, and all Roman prisoners, and pay 3200 talents. Thus ended this terrible struggle, in which Rome won because, though her generals were inferior to those of Carthage, her people far surpassed the Carthaginians in determination and energy; and her soldiers, fighting for their country, were better than the Carthaginian mercenaries—men of all sorts of races, who only fought for love of plunder and fighting, and hated Carthage herself.

**The First Roman Province.\***—The Carthaginian part of Sicily, the first territory that Rome

\* *Province*.—This word seems to have originally meant the duty of a magistrate, just as we say, "It is not my province to do this"; then it came to mean also the *country* in which a general commanded or a governor ruled.

ever conquered out of Italy, was made into a province ; that is, it was not left half independent like the Latins and other Italian allies of Rome, but it was ruled by a prætor (see page 70) sent from Rome as governor with a Roman army under his command. It sent no soldiers to the Roman armies, but paid a heavy tribute. It was unfortunate that the first Roman province was taken from Carthage, for the Romans also took the Carthaginian notion that a province was simply a country of conquered people from which as much money as possible was to be wrung. It was a long time before the Romans could get rid of this notion, and it cost the provinces two centuries of suffering. ✓

## CHAPTER XIII

### *BETWEEN THE FIRST AND SECOND PUNIC WARS.*

	B.C.
The Inexpiable War, . . . . .	241-238
Hamilcar Barca goes to Spain, . . . . .	236
His Death, . . . . .	228
Battle of Telamon, . . . . .	225
The Romans conquer Cisalpine Gaul, . . . . .	222
Hannibal becomes General in Spain, . . . . .	221
Siege of Saguntum, . . . . .	219

✓ **Hamilcar's Plan for conquering Rome.**—The peace which ended the First Punic war was felt by the two combatants to be only a truce; the struggle could not end till one or other was crushed. Hamilcar Barca had not given up hope; he had only agreed to the peace because he saw that Carthage needed a breathing space to recover her strength. Forced to abandon Sicily, he now bethought himself of Spain, where Carthage had a few trading colonies, such as Gades (Cadiz) on the south coast. His plan was to train a great army by wars against the natives, and replenish the Carthaginian treasury by their tribute and the produce of the rich silver mines of Spain, and then to invade Italy through Gaul.

**The Inexpiable War, B.C. 241-238.**—But this plan was delayed for a time. Exhausted by the long wars and the large sum which she was forced to pay Rome, Carthage was unable to furnish the money which she owed the mercenaries, who thereupon revolted and were joined by many of the Africans, as ready to turn against Carthage as in the days of Regulus. Rome too took a mean advantage of her rival's troubles; she gave aid to the rebels, and then pretending that Carthage had broken the treaty, forced her to surrender the islands of Sardinia and Corsica, and pay still more money. Sardinia and Corsica became the second Roman province. The Carthaginians dared not refuse, but how they must have longed for the day of reckoning which Hamilcar promised them. At last after three years Hamilcar completely crushed the revolt, by exterminating the rebels with such merciless severity that the war was called "The Inexpiable War". The power of Carthage in Africa was re-established.

**Hamilcar Barca in Spain, B.C. 236-228.**—At last Hamilcar was able to continue his great plan. He crossed over to Spain, taking with him his three sons, Hannibal, Hasdrubal, and Mago, his "lion's brood," as he called them, which he was bringing up to prey on the Romans. Hannibal was now nine years old; and it is said that before leaving Africa Hamilcar offered a great sacrifice to the gods, and made the boy swear at an altar eternal hostility to Rome. How well he kept his vow we shall soon see. For eight



years Hamilcar fought in Spain and conquered a great part of it, but he was never able to carry out his plan himself, for he was killed in battle (B.C. 228). He was succeeded in his command by his son-in-law Hasdrubal. You must not confuse this Hasdrubal with Hannibal's brother of the same name. The Carthaginians seem to have had very few names. Hannibal, Hasdrubal, and Hanno are all names which occur several times over.

Hasdrubal continued the conquest of Spain, and founded New Carthage (Carthagera) as the capital of the new province. At last the Romans woke up to what was going on in Spain, and they made a treaty with the Carthaginians, by which the Carthaginians might have as much as they could conquer in Spain south of the river Ibērus (Ebro), but the country north of that river was to be considered as belonging to Rome.

**Rome conquers Cisalpine Gaul, B.C. 225-222.**—While the Carthaginians were conquering in Spain and creeping on nearer to the Roman frontier, the Romans had not been idle. They had several small wars with tribes on the coast of the Adriatic, among others with the pirates of Illyria. There were also troubles with the Gauls of Cisalpine Gaul; so the Romans, to make their northern frontier more secure, sent a number of fresh colonists there and gave them grants of land. This was done by an agrarian law, proposed by the tribune Flaminius. The Senate resisted because the land was already

in the possession of the nobles, but the law was carried by the people in their Assembly, and by the Hortensian law (see p. 90) the Senate was obliged to accept it. The land was distributed, and Flaminius built a road to the new district called after him the *Via Flaminia*.

This alarmed the Gauls very much, for they thought it a sign that the Romans were going to attack them. So, in the year B.C. 225, they invaded Italy, but were utterly defeated in a great battle at Telamon in Etruria. For three years the war went on. In one battle the Roman general Marcellus, famous afterwards in the second Punic war, won the *Spolia Opima* (see page 24) by slaying the Gallic general, the third and last time they were won. In B.C. 222 Gallia Cisalpina was conquered by Flaminius, and two colonies, Placentia and Cremōna, founded to secure it.

**Hannibal becomes General in Spain and besieges Saguntum, B.C. 219.**—In Spain Hasdrubal died by the dagger of an assassin, and was succeeded by Hannibal, now twenty-six years old, B.C. 221. The time had almost come for carrying out Hamilcar's great plan of invading Italy. The next two years were spent by Hannibal in completing the conquest of the country south of the Ibērus. The last town which he attacked was Saguntum, near the east coast of Spain. Though Saguntum was south of the Ibērus the Romans, in violation of their treaty with Hasdrubal, had made an alliance with it. They therefore ordered Hannibal to abandon the siege; he

refused; and after an heroic resistance of eight months Saguntum was taken and destroyed; the inhabitants burnt themselves rather than fall into his hands.

**Declaration of War.**—Then the Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to demand the surrender of Hannibal for attacking a Roman ally. The Carthaginian Senate replied that Rome had no right to call Saguntum an ally; whereupon one of the ambassadors, Quintus Fabius Maximus, afterwards the saviour of Rome from Hannibal, held up the fold of his toga, saying, "I carry here peace and war; choose which you will have". "We will take whichever you give," was the answer. "Then," said Fabius, "we give you war"; and the Carthaginians, with loud shouts, accepted war.

**Hannibal's Plan.**—Little did those Roman ambassadors think what a war this was which they were thus lightly entering on—a war in which they were to see Italy overrun by the enemy for fifteen years, never entirely to recover, and from which they were only to emerge victorious after passing through trials and sufferings which perhaps no other nation could have endured. They might well feel confident. Rome was far stronger now than when the First Punic war began; the Italians were more closely united to her; by the possession of Sicily, Corsica, and Sardinia, she had the command of the Mediterranean. Carthage had been exhausted by the First Punic and the Inexpiable wars, and had now no fleet to speak of.



What was it that made Carthage strong enough to fight this second war? Nothing but the wonderful skill of Hannibal aided by Hamilcar's years of preparation in Spain. Hannibal, not Carthage, fought Rome; from the time he entered Italy he received hardly any support from home. How did Hannibal expect to crush Rome? His plan was this. After he had carried out Hamilcar's design and invaded Italy from Spain, he would be joined by the Cisalpine Gauls, eager for an opportunity of throwing off the Roman yoke; he would defeat the Romans in the field; and then the Latins, Samnites, and other Italians who, he thought, hated Rome as her subjects hated Carthage, would join him. Finally, his brother Hasdrubal would bring a fresh army from Spain into Italy, and Rome would be overpowered.

Such was the young general's plan. How far it was successful, and where it failed, the narrative of the war will show. ✓

## CHAPTER XIV.

### *SECOND PUNIC WAR, FIRST PERIOD—HANNIBAL'S VICTORIES IN ITALY.*

	B.C.
Hannibal crosses the Alps—Skirmish of Ticinus	
—Battle of Trebia, . . . . .	218
Battle of Lake Trasimēnus—Fabius Cunctator made Dictator, . . . . .	217
Battle of Cannæ—Revolt of Capua—Victory of the Scipios in Spain, . . . . .	216

**The Roman Plans**—In the spring of B.C. 218 both sides prepared for the struggle. The Romans had not heard of Hannibal's intention of invading Italy, or else did not believe in it. Their plan was that one consul, Publius Cornelius Scipio, should attack the Carthaginians in Spain, while the other, Sempronius, was to invade Africa. Each commanded an ordinary consular army of two legions and allies, about 20,000. Sempronius got as far as Sicily, but Scipio was delayed by a rising among the Gauls and did not embark till September.

**Hannibal's March to the Rhone, B.C. 218.**  
—Hannibal left New Carthage at the beginning of the summer at the head of 90,000 infantry, 12,000 cavalry, and 37 elephants. His infantry were Spaniards

and Africans, many of them Hamilcar's veterans ; the heavy cavalry were Spaniards ; for light cavalry he had the Numidians, the most famous light cavalry of the world, who rode without bit or bridle and guided their horses with their sword. He crossed the Pyrenees with 50,000 foot and 9000 horse, for he left his brother Hasdrubal behind with 10,000 men, and sent back some Spanish troops whom he could not trust. By the end of September he reached the Rhone. There he found his way barred by the Gauls of the neighbourhood, who, not being subject to the Romans, regarded him as an invader, not a deliverer. Hannibal easily outmanœuvred them and crossed the river.

**Scipio finds Hannibal in Gaul.**—A few days afterwards some of his Numidians, who were out scouting, rode back into camp hotly pursued by a large number of Roman horse who had met and beaten them. They belonged to Scipio's army, who, touching at Massilia (Marseilles), an ancient Greek colony friendly to Rome, on his voyage to Spain, had learnt to his surprise that Hannibal was actually in Gaul. He had landed his army, and was marching against him. But Hannibal had no intention of fighting on the west of the Alps and retreated up the Rhone. Scipio gave up the pursuit. He sent his army on to Spain under his brother, Cnæus, while he himself returned to Cisalpine Gaul, and took command of the troops there, to confront Hannibal should he cross the Alps, a proceeding which he probably

thought hardly conceivable. By thus sending his army to Spain Scipio saved Rome; for we shall see that it kept Hasdrubal employed in Spain, until Rome had time to recover from her first defeats by Hannibal.

**Hannibal crosses the Alps.**—Hannibal after his brush with the Roman cavalry marched up the Rhone valley under the direction of Gallic guides to the foot of the Alps. It was now October—a terrible time for his soldiers, men of the sunny south, to scale these snowy mountains. The Gauls, too, were hostile, and tried to bar his passage. But Hannibal pressed on. On the fourth day of the ascent he reached a valley inhabited by a tribe, who received him most amicably, but, when he had started again and was in the most difficult part of the pass, treacherously attacked him, rolling down great stones on the struggling column. At length, after terrible suffering, the top of the pass was reached. Here Hannibal gave his sorely-tryed troops two days' rest and cheered their drooping spirits. "All is now downhill," he told them; "Italy lies before you." But the downhill was even more difficult than the uphill. They were unmolested indeed by the Gauls; but the paths on the Italian side of the Alps were steeper and covered with snow and ice, and men and animals were continually losing their footing and falling over the precipice below. At last the plain was reached; but of the 60,000 men who had crossed the Rhone only 20,000 foot and 6000 horse were left; of the beasts of burden and elephants the loss had been equally terrible. The passage had

taken just a fortnight. The Pass was probably the Little St. Bernard close to Mount blanc.

**First Campaign: Skirmish of Ticinus, B.C. 218.**—Hannibal was now joined by some of the Gauls. He encamped by the river Ticinus, and Scipio, who was at Placentia, marched against him. A cavalry action took place, in which the Romans were beaten and the superiority of the Carthaginian cavalry shown. Scipio himself was dangerously wounded, and his life was only saved by the bravery of his son, Publius, a youth of seventeen, the future conqueror of Hannibal. Scipio retreated over the Padus to a secure position in the hills near the little river Trebia.

**Sempronius sent against Hannibal.**—During all this summer the other consul, Sempronius, had been in Sicily preparing for the invasion of Africa. He was now recalled, and succeeded in joining Scipio with his fresh forces. Hannibal was very anxious to force on a battle, for it was now December, and he wished to win a victory, so as to make more of the Gauls join him, before he was obliged to retire into winter quarters. But the Romans were in such a strong position behind the Trebia that, as long as they remained where they were, it was hopeless for Hannibal to attack them. Scipio knew all this, but unfortunately he was wounded, and so the command was in the hands of Sempronius, who, being at the head of superior forces, was burning with a desire to punish the insolent invader and win a great victory in the few months of his consulship that remained.

**Battle of Trebia.**—Hannibal knew Sempronius's character, and determined to draw him from his position. For several days he plundered the neighbouring villages, and so still further excited him. Then one morning, having made his men breakfast comfortably before their camp fires, he sent some of the Numidian cavalry across the Trebia to attack the Roman camp, and posted an ambush of 2000 men, under his brother Mago, near its banks. The Numidians were of course driven back.

Sempronius, excited at this success, at once ordered the whole army to advance. There was no time for breakfast. The legionaries hastily armed themselves, and waded through the icy-cold Trebia, fifty yards wide, swollen breast-high by the winter rains: on the other side they found the Carthaginian army drawn up to receive them, the infantry, as usual, in the centre, cavalry and elephants on the wings. Cold, wet, and hungry as they were, the legionaries, by their superior valour and numbers, were steadily gaining ground. But their cavalry were routed, the elephants charged their unguarded flanks, and suddenly the ambush under Mago burst upon their rear. 10,000 men in the centre cut their way right through the enemy and reached Placentia; the rest were driven across the Trebia with frightful loss to their camp.

The Carthaginians also suffered severely from the cold, and nearly all the elephants perished. The consuls succeeded in reuniting their shattered troops, and retired from Gaul. So ended the first campaign;

but it needed some more severe lessons to teach the Romans what sort of a man they had to deal with. Hannibal, satisfied with his victory, went into winter quarters. Several Gallic tribes now joined him; and many enlisted in his army and filled up its terribly reduced numbers.

**Second Campaign: Hannibal crosses the Apennines, B.C. 217.**—Meanwhile at Rome the elections for the new consuls took place. Unfortunately the danger of the State was increased by party quarrels. The popular party succeeded, in spite of the Senate, in electing as one of the consuls their champion Flaminius. Having conquered the Gauls, they thought that he would be the best man to conquer Hannibal. The other was an aristocrat, Servilius. The late consul, P. Scipio, was sent to Spain to reinforce his brother, who had been successful there against Hasdrubal. Of the unfortunate Sempronius we hear no more. To bar the way from Cisalpine Gaul into Italy, Flaminius posted himself at Arretium in Etruria, his colleague Servilius at Ariminum, on the Adriatic. But Hannibal avoided both the armies by crossing the Apennines in the extreme west, and marching for four days through the swamps of the river Arnus (Arno), where the troops could only find a dry place to sleep by piling up their baggage. Many men and horses perished of disease, and Hannibal himself lost an eye from ophthalmia. Hannibal then, to tempt Flaminius, marched southward past Arretium as if towards Rome.

**Battle of Lake Trasimenus.**—Flaminius reported Hannibal's movements to his colleague and then closely followed the enemy. The route lay along the northern shore of Lake Trasimēnus. Flaminius reached the lake in the evening, and then next morning pressed forward. On his right were the waters of the lake, on his left hills hidden by mist; but he never thought of examining the ground. Slowly the column wound its way along. The advanced guard had already passed the lake and was advancing up the hills, when it suddenly found the enemy in its front; then loud war-cries were heard, and the long column was assailed with showers of missiles from the hills.

The Roman army was caught in a trap. In another moment the fierce Gauls and Hannibal's dreaded cavalry were upon them. The Romans had no time to form. It was not a battle, but a butchery; many fled into the lake, but sank under the weight of their armour, or were mercilessly cut down by the cavalry. Flaminius died a soldier's death, vainly endeavouring to rally his troops. The advanced guard cut their way through the force in their front to the top of the hills, but the mist lifted and they saw the work of slaughter behind. They had nowhere to escape to, and, being pursued, were obliged to surrender next day. 15,000 prisoners were taken and the rest of the army destroyed, while Hannibal only lost a few Gauls. The Romans were kept as prisoners, the Italian allies set free.



**Fabius Cunctator appointed Dictator.—**

Great was the dismay at Rome at the news of this second defeat. The prætor announced it to the people in the Forum. "We have lost a great battle, our army is destroyed, Flaminius is killed." In this time of danger the people turned to the great Fabian house which had so often saved the State, and the aged Quintus Fabius Maximus, the ambassador who had offered peace or war to the Carthaginian Senate, was appointed dictator. The city was put in a state of defence, and fresh troops were enrolled, but not a man was withdrawn from the Scipios in Spain.

But Hannibal did not attack Rome; he marched plundering through the centre of Italy to the Adriatic, not a single city opening its gates. After resting his troops, and, it is said, re-arming his Africans after the Roman fashion from the spoils of Trasimenus, he invaded Apulia, where he found himself confronted by Fabius. Fabius' plan was not to fight Hannibal, but to watch and worry him and prevent him from taking any towns. So he was called henceforth Cunctator (the delayer), and a Roman poet sang of him, "One man by delaying restored the fortune of our State". Finding that Fabius would not fight, Hannibal advanced into Campania; still no city would join him, and he suddenly found himself surrounded in a valley by Fabius, who had occupied all the defiles out of it. But Hannibal was not so easily caught: suddenly in the night the Roman soldiers saw a number of moving

lights on the hill. Thinking it was Hannibal's army escaping across the hills they left the defile in order to attack it; but it was only a number of oxen turned loose by Hannibal with lighted faggots on their heads, and before they could return to their post he had passed through the unguarded defile and escaped. After some time he returned to Apulia, and began collecting supplies for the winter.

**Fabius and Minucius.**—Thus the year was passing away without another disaster. But there was great discontent at Rome, because Hannibal had been allowed to plunder where he liked. Soon Minucius, the master of the horse, sent home exaggerated reports of some trivial successes which he had won in Fabius' absence. So the people passed a foolish decree giving Minucius equal power with Fabius; and they divided the army between them. Hannibal soon tempted Minucius into a battle, and would have destroyed his army had not Fabius come up and saved him. Then Minucius generously acknowledged his error, and resigned the whole command again into Fabius' hands.

**Third Campaign: The People make Varro Consul, B.C. 216.**—In spite of Minucius' failure, the Roman people were still unconvinced of the wisdom of Fabius' policy; they determined to fight Hannibal again, and elected as consul for the next year (B.C. 216) a popular favourite named Varro, said to have been a butcher's son, who had been one of the chief champions of Minucius. His colleague, however, was

a noble of some military experience named *Æmilius Paullus*, who, the Senate hoped, might check his rashness. To make the victory more certain, double the usual number of legions were raised, but the people forgot that Hannibal's strength lay in his cavalry.

Hannibal was still in Apulia, near the little town of Cannæ on the river Aufidus, and there the Romans faced him. They numbered 80,000 infantry, comprising however a great many recruits, and 6000 cavalry. Hannibal had 40,000 veteran infantry and 10,000 cavalry, and the level plains of Apulia were peculiarly suited for cavalry. The Roman consuls, instead of dividing their forces as usual, took command on alternate days, an arrangement if possible worse than the other. *Æmilius* wished to draw Hannibal away to more hilly country, where he could not use his cavalry so well, but *Varro* was determined to fight him where he was. So on his day of command the red ensign, the Roman signal for battle, was seen flying from his headquarters.

**Battle of Cannæ.**—When Hannibal saw the Roman army forming for battle, he at once accepted the challenge and formed his army against them: he was in great spirits and confident of victory. Hannibal noticed that the Roman infantry were drawn up much closer and deeper than usual, probably on account of the number of recruits among them; so he drew up his infantry, though only half their number, in a line rather longer than the Roman, the Gauls and Spaniards in the centre. the Africans on the flanks.

In the battle the Roman infantry at first drove back the Gauls and Spaniards, but as they advanced they pressed and crowded closer together, until they found themselves attacked in flank by the Africans; the Gauls and Spaniards soon rallied and charged them again in front; and lastly the Carthaginian cavalry, who had overpowered and routed the Romans, fell upon their rear. Thus assailed on all sides, the Roman army was reduced to a confused and struggling mass; all order was lost; the brave legionaries, packed close together and unable to use their arms, fell where they stood. All day the work of butchery went on, and in the evening the consul *Æmilius Paullus*, 80 senators, and 70,000 men lay on that fatal field. *Varro*, who commanded one wing of the cavalry, rode off the field when they were routed. Hannibal lost less than 6000 men.

**The Southern Italians join Hannibal.**—It seemed as if Rome must now fall. "Send me on with the cavalry," said *Maharbal*, the commander of the cavalry, "and in four days you shall sup in the capitol." But *Hannibal* refused his offer. Cavalry could not storm a city; the Romans would be sure to defend their walls, and failure would be ruin to him. So he preferred to adhere to his original plan of uniting the Italians against Rome; this was at last beginning to succeed; most of the southern Italians, with the exception of *Tarentum* and other Greek cities, now joined him. He sent *Mago* to *Carthage* with the news of the victory, and a request for reinforce-

ments, and also an embassy to Rome in the hope that she might be sufficiently cowed to be ready to treat for peace.

**Despair at Rome.**—The battle of Cannæ reduced the people of Rome to utter despair. Many wished to abandon the city, as was done after the defeat of Allia; but the Senate remained firm, and, under the leadership of Fabius Cunctator, took prompt measures. A dictator was appointed; troops were collected to man the walls by freeing slaves and enrolling criminals and debtors; no women were allowed to appear in the streets; and mourning was restricted to thirty days, for there was scarcely a house that had not lost a member. At last came news that Hannibal was not marching on Rome. There was still hope; men again began to breathe freely. Hannibal's embassy was not allowed to enter the walls; and the unfortunate Varro being brave enough to return was thanked by the Senate for not having despaired of the Republic.

**The Revolt of Capua.**—After securing his allies in the south of Italy, Hannibal invaded Campania, and inflicted another blow on Rome by persuading Capua, the second city of Italy, to revolt. He took several other towns of Campania; but Marcellus, the hero of the Gallic war, who had been sent against him at the head of what troops could be collected, secured the important town of Nola, and inflicted on Hannibal his first defeat when he tried to attack it. Hannibal then retired to winter quarters in Capua, which, the

Roman historians say, by its luxury ruined the health of his army. But there is no evidence of this in the account of the war.

**Hasdrubal defeated by the Scipios in Spain, B.C. 216.**—From Spain came the one gleam of hope that was vouchsafed the Romans in this terrible year; for Hasdrubal, who now felt himself strong enough to carry out his part of the plan of the invasion of Italy, marched against the Scipios, but was severely defeated just about the time of the battle of Cannæ. So Hasdrubal had to give up all thought of his march for the present, and devote all his energy to defending the Carthaginian empire in Spain, and the reinforcements which Mago was to have brought to Hannibal had to be sent to Spain instead. We now see how wise it was of Scipio to send on his army to Spain when he met Hannibal in Gaul; for if Hasdrubal had come the year after Cannæ, what hope would there have been for Rome?

*Season comes to his  
if you are an  
ape*

## CHAPTER XV.

### *SECOND PUNIC WAR, SECOND PERIOD—RESIST- ANCE AND FINAL VICTORY OF ROME.*

	B.C.
Revolt of Sicily, . . . . .	214
Tarentum betrayed to Hannibal—The Romans besiege Capua, . . . . .	212
Defeat and death of the two Scipios in Spain— Hannibal marches on Rome—Surrender of Capua, . . . . .	211
The younger Scipio sent to Spain—He takes New Carthage—Sicily reconquered, . . . .	210
Tarentum recaptured—Hannibal losing ground in Italy, . . . . .	209
Hasdrubal crosses the Alps—Battle of Metaurus —Hannibal retires into Bruttium, . . .	207
The Carthaginians driven out of Spain, . . .	206
Scipio invades Africa, . . . . .	204
Hannibal recalled to Africa, . . . . .	203
Battle of Zama—Carthage makes peace, . . .	202

✓ **The War after Cannæ, B.C. 215-213—  
Change in the Roman Plans.**—With the ex-  
ception of Hasdrubal's defeat in Spain, Hannibal  
had been perfectly successful so far in carrying out  
his plan. He had beaten the Romans in several  
great battles, and many of the Italians had joined  
him; Capua was in his hands. But the end had not

come yet ; the Latin towns and colonies in the centre of Italy remained faithful, as did Tarentum and the other Greek towns in the south. The Roman people had learnt a lesson from Trasimenus and Cannæ ; they gave up interfering in the war, and left the conduct of it to the Senate, under the leadership of Fabius Cunctator. No demagogues, like Varro or Flaminius, were now elected consuls, but experienced soldiers, who did not attack Hannibal in the field, but harassed and plundered the Italians who had joined him, and occasionally won victories over his lieutenants. Hannibal himself was obliged to march to and fro to protect his allies, a task almost too much for his little army, deprived of the expected reinforcements from home and from Spain ; and everywhere he was confronted by the Latin colonies, into which the Roman armies could retire, for he had no means of besieging them. Nor was his brother more successful in Spain ; he was again defeated by the Scipios (B.C. 215), and then had to return to Africa, owing to a rebellion which had broken out in Numidia. While he was away the Scipios conquered nearly all Spain. Hasdrubal's march seemed further off than ever.

**Revolt of Sicily—Siege of Syracuse, B.C. 214-212.**—But a great blow fell on the Romans in Sicily. In B.C. 216 their faithful ally, Hiero, King of Syracuse, died. On his death Syracuse was convulsed with civil strife, and in the year B.C. 214 declared for Carthage against Rome, and was followed in its defection by most of the other towns of Sicily.



Marcellus, at that time governor of Sicily, marched against Syracuse; a Carthaginian army which came to its relief was destroyed by fever; and after a siege of over two years Syracuse fell (B.C. 212). By B.C. 210 Sicily was conquered, and the *whole* of it, including Syracuse, now became a Roman province.

**Hannibal takes Tarentum—The Romans besiege Capua, B.C. 212.**—The same year that Marcellus took Syracuse, Hannibal gained his first great success in Italy since Cannæ. Tarentum, the most important city in Italy after Capua, was betrayed to him. There had long been a Carthaginian party in the town, and at last, owing to the carelessness of the Roman governor, they succeeded in opening the gates to Hannibal. The example of Tarentum was followed by many other Greek cities. The Romans however, succeeded in holding the citadel; Hannibal began to besiege it, but while the siege was going on he was called away by an appeal for aid from Capua. For the Romans now felt themselves strong enough to besiege that city: if they could take it and punish it for its revolt, it would be the death blow of Hannibal's hopes; for the Italians would see that he could not protect them against Rome.

Hannibal first sent one of his lieutenants with a convoy to Capua, but the Romans surprised and took it, so he was obliged to go himself. The Romans retired at his approach, but when he departed to continue the siege of the citadel of Tarentum they

again closed round Capua. 60,000 men were employed in the siege, and a double line of fortifications built right round the town.

**Hannibal marches on Rome—Surrender of Capua, B.C. 211.**—By the summer of B.C. 211 their provisions were almost exhausted, and the Capuans were in despair. The weeks passed on, but there was no sign of Hannibal and his relieving army. At last a Numidian succeeded in scaling the Roman lines and carrying a message to him. Hannibal at once marched on Capua. This time the Romans did not retreat: secure in their fortifications they could defy Hannibal and his cavalry. A desperate battle took place, the Capuans attacking from within, Hannibal from without. But all in vain; the Roman lines were impregnable.

Then, at last, Hannibal marched on Rome, hoping thus to make the Romans loosen their grip on Capua. The dismay at his approach was terrible: crowds of fugitives came flying into the city before the dreaded Numidians. But amid all the confusion the Senate did not lose its head. The city walls were strong: there were troops enough to hold them against a sudden assault, without withdrawing the armies from Capua. So Hannibal was disappointed. An attack on Rome was hopeless. He leisurely rode round the walls, to show how the proud city was humbled, and then returned to the south of Italy, burning and plundering.

Capua soon after surrendered. Many of the guilty

leaders committed suicide ; others were put to death ; most of the population were sold into slavery.

**Defeat and Death of the Two Scipios in Spain, B.C. 212.**—Thus in Italy the crisis was past. Hannibal could be held at bay, for no town would join him with the fearful fate of Capua before its eyes. The danger now lay in Spain ; for there, the year of the beginning of the siege of Capua, the two Scipios, who had fought so long and so well, and saved Rome in her hour of need, were both at last defeated and slain (B.C. 212), and Hasdrubal was again preparing to join his brother in Italy. A fresh general had to be sent thither, and when all shrank from the dangerous post, young Publius Scipio came forward ; and though he was only twenty-four years of age, and so had never been a consul, the people accepted him with enthusiasm, and he was sent with the rank of proconsul to avenge his father and uncle, and keep Hasdrubal out of Italy.

**The Young Scipio takes New Carthage, B.C. 210.**—Scipio determined to begin by striking a deadly blow. Marching 300 miles along the coast, from his winter quarters at Tarrāco (Taragona), he surprised and captured New Carthage, the Carthaginian capital of Spain, before Hasdrubal could come to its aid. Immense amounts of money and supplies fell into his hands, and the Carthaginian power in Spain was seriously shaken. The Carthaginian prisoners he sent to Rome ; the rest of the captives he treated very kindly, especially some Spanish

hostages. In this way Scipio won the hearts of the Spaniards, who hated the Carthaginians, and they began to come over to the Romans. Hasdrubal gave up all thought of opposing him in Spain, and continued his preparations for his march into Italy.

**Recapture of Tarentum—Hannibal losing ground in Italy, B.C. 209.**—Since the fall of Capua Hannibal had been steadily losing ground: he could no longer protect the Samnites and his other allies from the attacks of the Romans, and they were gradually returning to their allegiance. Tarentum too, whose citadel had remained unconquered, was recaptured (B.C. 209) by old Fabius Cunctator, his last service in the field to Rome. But the strain on Rome's resources was terrible; the Senate had to appeal to the wealthy to contribute their private property: at this time over 160,000 men, one-fourth of the citizens and allies, were in arms.

**Hasdrubal enters Italy, B.C. 207.**—Hasdrubal was now ready to begin his march. Scipio attacked and defeated him. But in spite of his defeat he continued his project, and by crossing the west end of the Pyrenees eluded Scipio, who expected him to have followed Hannibal's route by the east coast. Scipio, utterly ignorant of his movements, was engaged in his work of gaining over the Spanish tribes to the side of Rome.

In the spring of the next year, B.C. 207, Hasdrubal crossed the Alps; and the long dreaded moment had

come when Rome would have to face the two sons of Hamilcar on the soil of Italy. No less than twenty-three legions were put into the field: the consuls were Claudius Nero, who had fought in Spain against Hasdrubal, and Livius Salinātor, who was an enemy of Nero, but was publicly reconciled to him before the campaign began. Nero was sent south to watch Hannibal, Livius north to bar Hasdrubal's advance. Hasdrubal sent off three troopers from Cisalpine Gaul to inform his brother of his plans; the troopers failed to find Hannibal, but fell into the hands of Nero; thus all Hasdrubal's plans were known to the Romans and not to Hannibal. ✓

**Nero's March.**—Nero instantly made up his mind. Hasdrubal must be crushed before Hannibal knew that he was in Italy. Giving out that he was going to attack one of Hannibal's posts in Lucania, he started by night, with a picked force of 8000 men, to join Livius, who was 300 miles away. Before starting he sent messengers to the Senate to warn them to put the city in a state of defence, and also to the tribes through whose territory he would pass to order them to bring down all the provisions they could to the roadside. The soldiers on being informed of the real object of their march showed the utmost enthusiasm. They pressed forward, hardly giving themselves time to sleep. The whole countryside crowded the line of march, provisions were brought in abundance, which the soldiers ate standing in their ranks, and prayers were offered for victory. In the incredibly short time

of a week the camp of Livius was reached, 300 miles across the roughest country in Italy. No such march has ever been made.

**Battle of the Metaurus—Death of Hasdrubal.**—Livius was confronting Hasdrubal just south of the little river Metaurus. Nero's men entered the camp by night that Hasdrubal might not know of their arrival. But in the morning he heard the trumpet sound twice, and guessed what had happened. But the river was behind him so he could not retreat: his men fought bravely but the Romans were too strong. At last he saw that all was lost, and, spurring his horse into the midst of the enemy, fell fighting to the last. Nero at once marched back to his own army, and, it is said, announced the victory to Hannibal by brutally throwing his brother's head into his camp.

At the news of the victory the whole city of Rome burst into transports of joy. The Senate ordered a public thanksgiving of three days. They felt that Hannibal's great plan was wrecked and all danger was over. Hannibal could effect nothing during the rest of the campaign, and when it was over the consuls returned to the city and celebrated their triumph, the first since Hannibal entered Italy.

By the end of the next year Scipio conquered the whole of Spain. He now returned to Rome to stand for the consulship. The Senate refused him a triumph because he had held no high office. So he entered the city as a private person; but such

crowds came to witness his entry that it was like a triumphal procession. The brilliancy of his exploits made people forget that he had allowed Hasdrubal to invade Italy, the one thing which he was sent to Spain to prevent.

**Scipio invades Africa, B.C. 204.**—Scipio was consul in B.C. 205. Hannibal, since the battle of the Metaurus, had been forced to retire into Bruttium, the toe of Italy. Cooped up there, he could do no harm, but it might be dangerous to attack him. So Scipio formed the bold plan of ending the war by an invasion of Africa. The Senate, led by old Fabius Cunctator, opposed the project as too dangerous; but the people forced them to give in. He had on his side a Numidian prince named Masinissa, who had joined him in Spain to obtain his help against his rival Syphax, prince of another tribe of Numidians. But before Scipio's arrival Syphax and the Carthaginians had conquered Masinissa and driven him out of his dominions. Scipio spent the year of his consulship in Sicily in preparation, landed in Africa in the spring of B.C. 204, and began to besiege the town of Utica. Utica proved too strong, and at the end of the summer Scipio was compelled to abandon the siege owing to the approach of a Carthaginian army under Hasdrubal son of Gisco, and Syphax.

**Carthaginian Defeats.**—Hannibal recalled from Italy, B.C. 203.—The Roman and Carthaginian armies lay encamped near one another during

the winter. Suddenly one night Scipio attacked his foes; their encampment, which was composed of wooden huts, was set ablaze, and in the confusion more than 40,000 men perished by the flames and swords of the Romans. Hasdrubal and Syphax got together another army, but were again defeated. Not long afterwards Masinissa captured Syphax, and so made himself king of all Numidia; the dreaded Numidian cavalry were now on the side of the Romans. Scipio gave up all thoughts of taking Utica, and marched plundering and ravaging through the country. The Carthaginians in despair sent orders to Hannibal to return and defend his country in her extremity; without a murmur he obeyed the call, though it meant the ruin of all his hopes. Thus Italy was freed at last from the terrible foe that had ravaged her soil for fifteen long years; and the people's trust in Scipio was justified.

**Battle of Zama—Carthage makes peace, B.C. 202.**—Next summer the two great generals encountered each other near the town of Zama. They had an interview to try to arrange terms of peace, but it was impossible. Hannibal was obliged to fight, though the odds were against him; his veterans were few, the Numidian cavalry were in the ranks of the enemy, his only hopes were in his elephants, of which he had eighty. But the elephants, as so often happened, did more harm than good; they were driven back on his cavalry on the wings and threw it into confusion, so that the Roman cavalry won an easy victory. In the



centre the veterans of Italy, in spite of the flight of the rest of the infantry, maintained a stubborn fight against overwhelming numbers, till the victorious Roman cavalry fell upon their rear and cut them to pieces. Hannibal rode off the field and advised his countrymen to make peace.

The terms of peace were very hard. Carthage had to surrender all her possessions out of Africa, all her fleet and elephants ; to pay 10,000 talents in ten years , to acknowledge Masinissa as king of Numidia and an ally of Rome ; and to engage not to make war without the consent of Rome. Scipio at last enjoyed the triumph before denied him ; he received the name of Africanus in honour of his victory ; the people regarded him almost as a god, but the nobles were still jealous.

Thus Hannibal's plan for conquering Rome ended in failure. It failed because (1) the Latin towns and colonies remained loyal, and Hannibal, whose strength lay in his cavalry, could not besiege and take them ; (2) Rome, when unable to fight Hannibal in Italy, nevertheless carried the war into Spain, and thence, when the right general was found, into Africa ; (3) Hannibal was fighting unsupported from home, with a small army of mercenaries against a nation in arms.

**Italy after the Second Punic War.**—You have been told of the punishment of Capua. The fate of the Bruttians, who had been loyal to Hannibal to the last, was almost as cruel ; the whole nation became serfs, tilling the land for their Roman masters. The other

Italians lost large tracts of land, on which were settled Scipio's victorious soldiers and other colonists. But Rome herself and the loyal Latins had suffered almost as severely. Their lands had been mercilessly ravaged for fifteen years, and the brave yeomen farmers, the mainstay of the state, had almost entirely disappeared.

**Cisalpine Gaul and Spain.**—The most useful allies of Hannibal had been the Cisalpine Gauls, who had joined him immediately on his arrival in Italy. At the close of the war they were still in arms; fighting at once began and went on for ten years, for they made a gallant resistance, winning several victories. But at last, utterly worn out, they submitted, and never rebelled again; soon afterwards the Ligurians (see page 7) east of the Alps were conquered after a long struggle. Fresh colonies were sent into Cisalpine Gaul, but it was apparently not made into a regular province for another hundred years.

Spain, at the conclusion of peace, was made into two provinces—Hither Spain, the eastern part, and Further Spain, the south-western part. But the Romans only held the coasts: inland the barbarian tribes, though they had been won over for a long time by Scipio's charm of manner, reasserted their independence and would not submit to the Roman yoke. For more than twenty years they resisted like the Gauls, often defeating the Romans. At length, in B.C. 178, they were persuaded by the Roman general Tiberius Gracchus to submit. But Spain was not yet really conquered.

0

## CHAPTER XVI.

### *ROME BEGINS TO CONQUER THE WORLD.*

	B. C.
War against Philip of Macedon, . . . .	200
Philip defeated at Cynoscephalæ, . . . .	197
Greece proclaimed free, . . . . .	196
War against Antiochus of Syria and the Ætolians, . . . .	192
Antiochus defeated at Magnesia, . . . . .	190
Death of Hannibal and Scipio Africanus, . . . .	183
War against Perseus of Macedon, . . . . .	171
Perseus defeated at Pydna—Conquest of Macedon, . . . .	168

✓ **The East.**—Rome, now mistress of the West, began to turn her thoughts to the East. It was now about 130 years since Alexander the Great, King of Macedonia, had conquered the Persians and founded his mighty empire. When he died without leaving an heir, his empire broke up, and his ablest generals, after much fighting against one another, made themselves kings over different parts of it. Their successors still held sway; the most important of them, at this time, were Philip, King of Macedonia; Antiochus, called the Great, King of Syria and a great part of Asia Minor; and Ptolemy Philopator, King

of Egypt. Greece, now sadly fallen from its ancient glories, was for the most part subject to Macedonia ; but there were two states which still maintained their independence : they were the Ætolian League, a wild band of freebooting mountaineers, north-west of the Gulf of Corinth, and the Achæan League, a more orderly league of cities in the Peloponnesus.

**Philip, King of Macedon.**—Philip was an able and ambitious king. During the second Punic war he had joined Carthage against Rome, but the Romans, by setting the Ætolians against him, had kept him occupied, and his alliance was of no use to Hannibal. But they were not likely to forget his conduct.

The year of the peace between Rome and Carthage, Philip began a fresh scheme of aggression. Ptolemy Philopator, King of Egypt, had lately died, and his successor was a mere boy ; so Philip made an agreement with Antiochus that they should divide his dominions, which included Phœnicia and many cities on the Ægæan Sea. Antiochus invaded Phœnicia, and Philip attacked Thrace and sent a fleet into the Ægean under a Greek mercenary named Dicaearchus, a brutal man, who set up altars to the goddesses of lawlessness and godlessness. Dicaearchus sailed about the Ægean massacring and plundering with frightful cruelty. Thereupon the island of Rhodes, famous at this time for its fleet and commerce, and Attälus, King of Pergämus, a little state on the west coast of Asia Minor, that had arisen

out of the break up of Alexander's empire, took up arms, but they were not strong enough to stop Philip's progress.

**The Romans interfere.**—Meanwhile embassies came to Rome from Egypt and the Greeks imploring aid. The Senate wished to punish Philip for his alliance with Carthage, but the people were loath to begin a fresh war just after the conclusion of their terrible struggle with Hannibal. However, something must be done. Ambassadors were sent to the East, and Egypt was persuaded to make peace with Antiochus by giving up Phœnicia. Antiochus, having got what he wanted, at once deserted his ally. Philip, however, would not give way: he believed himself strong enough to brave the enmity of Rome.

**War against Philip, B.C. 200.—Battle of Cynoscephalæ, B.C. 197.**—Still the Romans hesitated. But next year Philip attacked Athens. Then, at last, they declared war. The fleet, with the help of the Rhodians, drove Philip from the sea, and saved Athens; but the army, which was composed of only two legions, at first effected nothing. For two years it struggled in vain in the mountains between Epirus and Thessaly; but in the third year the consul Flamininus, joined by the Ætolians, forced his way over, and next year, his command having been prolonged, he totally defeated Philip, near a hill called Cynoscephalæ (κυνὸς κεφαλᾶί, Dog's Heads), in Thessaly. The two armies, nearly equal in numbers, encountered one another unexpectedly on a

misty day. The Romans, on this occasion, had elephants in their army, and by their aid, and also that of some Ætolian cavalry, the legion again proved its superiority to the phalanx.

Philip fled to Macedonia: his only army was destroyed, so he had to submit to the Roman terms. He was obliged to give up all his foreign possessions; to promise not to have more than 5000 soldiers, or to make war without the consent of the Roman Senate; and to pay a large sum of money. Thus the fortune of a single day had reduced the proud successor of Alexander the Great to the level of a subject ally of Rome.

**Flamininus proclaims the Freedom of Greece, B.C. 196.**—Then Flamininus returned to Greece, and at the great festival of the Isthmian games, near Corinth, which happened to be held that year, proclaimed to the assembled multitude that Greece was now free from the Macedonian yoke. This proclamation was received with the wildest joy and enthusiasm, and Flamininus was hailed as the Liberator of Greece. It seemed as if the old days of Greek independence had returned. But soon the sad truth became plain, that the Greeks were not fit for independence; in fact, they were merely exchanging the yoke of Macedon for the yoke of Rome.

**War against the Ætolians and Antiochus, B.C. 192—Hannibal joins Antiochus.**—Amid the general rejoicings the Ætolians held themselves sullenly aloof. These proud but ignorant moun-

taineers imagined that they, not the Romans, had conquered Philip: and when Flamininus settled the peace with Philip without consulting them, they were so angry that they turned against Rome and invited Antiochus to come and help them to drive the Romans out of Greece. Antiochus was already on bad terms with Rome, for he had begun again to make conquests in Asia Minor, and was fighting with the Rhodians and Eumēnes, the successor of Attālus. About this time, too, Hannibal, forced to flee from Carthage, came to his court, still burning to avenge himself on his old foes.

So Antiochus was only too ready to listen to the Ætolians. The war broke out B.C. 192, and he crossed over with an army into Greece. But both he and the Ætolians found one another's forces much weaker than they expected; and Philip would not join them, for he had not forgotten how Antiochus had before deserted him. The Roman Consul, by the skill of an officer named Cato, whom you will hear of again, defeated them in the famous pass of Thermopŷlæ, B.C. 191; and Antiochus had to flee back to Asia. Hannibal could give no help, for Antiochus only allowed him to command the fleet.

**Battle of Magnesia, B.C. 190.**—In the spring of B.C. 190 the Romans invaded Asia. The consul in command was L. Scipio, brother of the great P. Scipio Africanus, who accompanied him. The army marched through Thessaly and Macedonia to the Hellespont. The Rhodian and Roman fleet won a

victory at sea in spite of Hannibal's efforts. Antiochus withdrew his troops to defend the great fortress of Sardis, and the Romans crossed the Hellespont unopposed.

Near the town of Magnesia in Lydia Antiochus met them, with an unwieldy host of Asiatics with elephants and scythe-chariots, but the battle was never in doubt for a moment; 40,000 Asiatics were killed, and only a few hundred Romans. This cheap but decisive victory made Rome the mistress of the East.

Antiochus was obliged to pay a large sum of money and surrender his dominions in Asia Minor, most of which were given to Eumēnes, and some to the Rhodians as a reward for their services; but Philip received nothing at all. In honour of his victory L. Scipio received the surname of Asiaticus, in imitation of his brother Africanus.

The unhappy Ætolians continued the hopeless contest the year after Magnesia. In the stronghold of Ambracia for a long time they heroically held out. When at last they were starved into submission the Romans contented themselves with enrolling them as subject-allies. The only free power now left in Greece was the Achæan League.

**The End of Hannibal and of Scipio Africanus, B.C. 183.** — One of the conditions of peace to which Antiochus was compelled to submit was that he should surrender Hannibal. But this he was unable to do, for Hannibal, who knew well the



undying hatred with which the Romans pursued him, had already fled. He went first to Crete, and thence to the court of Prusias, King of Bithynia, a small kingdom in the north of Asia Minor, whom he aided in a war against Rome's ally, Eumenes of Pergamus. But the Romans presently ordered Prusias to give him up, and he dared not refuse. So one day Hannibal found his house surrounded by soldiers ; he attempted to escape by a side door, but it was too late. But Hannibal was fully prepared for the worst : by means of a poison which he always carried about with him he saved himself from the shame of falling into the hands of his relentless foes. Thus, in lonely exile, abandoned by his countrymen and by all whom he tried to serve, having seen all his schemes ruined and Rome triumphant everywhere, perished the victor of Cannæ, in the seventy-sixth year of his age.

The same year died Hannibal's great opponent Scipio Africanus. Though his brilliant victories had saved Rome, he offended his countrymen by his haughty manners, for he treated them almost as a king might treat his subjects. After the conquest of Asia Minor a charge was brought against him and his brother, L. Scipio, of keeping some of the money to themselves. So in disgust he retired to his country house in Campania, where he died. Besides his other distinctions, it should be recorded that he was one of the first Romans to study the language and writings of the Greeks, and he was one of the best educated men of his time. ✓

**Renewed Plotting and Death of Philip.—**

Philip was deeply hurt that he received no reward for his help against Antiochus, like Eumenes and the Rhodians. It was plain that Rome intended sooner or later to humble him still more; so he determined to try to regain his old power. Macedonia was recovering from the defeat of Cynoscephalæ, and Philip began to intrigue with the enemies of Rome, helping Prusias in his war against Eumenes. Eumenes complained to Rome, and the Senate punished Philip by taking some towns away from him. Convinced at last of the hopelessness of the struggle the old king died of a broken heart (B.C. 179).

**Accession of Perseus, B.C. 179—War between Rome and Perseus, B.C. 172.**—He was succeeded by his son Perseus, a less able and very avaricious man. He continued his father's task of gradually strengthening Macedonia; but in the year B.C. 172 Eumenes, complained to Rome that Perseus was increasing his army, and Rome declared war.

The Romans as usual began the war by sending out bad generals, the men who happened to be elected to the consulship, and too few troops. They made repeated attempts to cross the mountains between Thessaly and Macedonia, but met with nothing but defeat, till Perseus, in a moment of cowardice, abandoned the famous pass of Tempē. Eumenes and the Rhodians began to think the Romans were not so strong after all. The Rhodians actually had the hardihood to declare that the war must cease, and that they

would declare war on whichever side was responsible for its continuance. Eumenes very nearly sent troops to the assistance of Perseus, but the two kings could not agree as to the price to be paid for this assistance.

**Battle of Pydna, B.C. 168.**—The Senate took no notice at the time of the arrogance of the Rhodians or the treachery of Eumenes, but despatched larger forces than before. Æmilius Paulus, son of the consul killed at Cannæ, the new consul, was an able general. The Roman army advanced from Tempe, and near the town of Pydna the decisive battle was fought. Like Cynoscephalæ it was brought on accidentally and was soon over: the phalanx being on rough ground fell into confusion, and could make no resistance to the swords of the legionaries. The army of Perseus was destroyed. The phalanx with which Alexander the Great had won his victories had again found its match in the Roman legion, and henceforward we hear of it no more.

**End of Perseus—Macedon made a Roman Province.**—Macedonia submitted at once to the conquerors. The unhappy Perseus, hunted like a beast of prey, carried his treasures with him wherever he went, but was at length captured at the island of Samothrace. He was brought to the camp of Æmilius Paullus, who treated him kindly, but he carried him to Rome and made him walk as captive behind his car in his triumph. Afterwards he was

allowed to live in honourable captivity at Alba Longa, where he died in a few years, according to some accounts by voluntary starvation.

The famous old kingdom of Macedon was destroyed; the country was split up into four districts which were declared "free" by the Romans, but all the nobles and leading men were transported to Italy, and the poor tillers of the field were left. The four districts were kept quite distinct, the inhabitants not being allowed even to intermarry; but some years afterwards Macedonia was made into a single province under a Roman governor.

**The Rhodians and Eumenes.**—The sudden collapse of Perseus was a grievous blow to the Rhodians and Eumenes; for mercy was the last thing to expect from Rome. The Rhodian envoys made a piteous appeal to the Senate, confessing their fault in the last war, but recalling their previous services against Philip and Antiochus. But unfaithful allies, especially when they had so grievously insulted the majesty of Rome, were not to be forgiven; they lost all their possessions on the mainland of Asia, and were enrolled as subject allies of Rome. Eumenes hurried to Italy to plead his cause, but when he landed at Brundisium he was coldly informed that a law had just been passed that no king might enter Rome. He returned to Pergamus greatly humbled; his proud position among Eastern kings as the friend of Rome was gone, and he died ten years afterwards.

**Greece after the Macedonian Wars.**—Greece was left in a very unsettled condition : in most of the states partisans of Rome were set over the government, but they were continually quarrelling among themselves and appealing to Rome to interfere. The only strong state now left was the Achæan League ; but its loyalty was suspected, and 1000 of its leading citizens were summoned to Italy to be tried for not having given proper help to Rome against Perseus. But when they arrived, instead of being tried, they were kept as prisoners and settled in various Italian towns. One of them was named Polybius ; he was an accomplished literary man, and soon became friends with many leading Romans. He employed his time in writing a history of Rome which has become very famous.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### *CONQUEST OF CARTHAGE AND GREECE—WAR IN SPAIN.*

	B. C.
Third Punic War—Siege of Carthage, . . . . .	149
Capture of Carthage, . . . . .	146
Conquest of Greece—Destruction of Corinth, . . . . .	146
Beginning of the Rebellion in Spain, . . . . .	153
Rise of Viriathus in Spain, . . . . .	149
Beginning of the war against Numantia, . . . . .	141
Murder of Viriathus, . . . . .	139
Capture of Numantia—End of Spanish war, . . . . .	133

✓ **Carthage after the Second Punic War.**—When their great struggle with Rome ended in their utter defeat and the loss of their empire, the Carthaginians gave up as hopeless all thoughts of becoming again a great power. They now devoted themselves to their old pursuit of commerce; and such was their wonderful energy that their prosperity soon returned; their wharves were again crowded with ships; their warehouses teemed with merchandise, and the streets were thronged with a busy crowd of merchants. If Rome would only leave Carthage alone, it seemed that a happy peaceful career was before her.

But that Rome would not do. It will be

remembered that after the war Rome had set up her ally Masinissa on the throne of Numidia, with all the territory which had ever been Numidian, but it was never distinctly stated what that territory was. So, from time to time, Masinissa was continually seizing some little bit of Carthaginian territory. The Carthaginians were forbidden to make war without the consent of the Romans; so they were obliged to be always sending embassies to Rome with no hope of redress. On one occasion they complained that Masinissa had taken no less than seventy towns in two years. "Give us permission to defend ourselves," they said, "or at least say, once for all, how much Carthaginian territory you wish to present to Masinissa."

**Embassy of Cato, B.C. 157—*Delenda est Carthago*.**—At last the Senate thought Masinissa had gone far enough. They sent an embassy to definitely fix the Carthaginian frontier (B.C. 157). But this embassy led to a most unexpected result. Among the ambassadors was Cato (see page 156). On his arrival he was thunderstruck by the prosperity which met his eyes. Carthage must, he thought, be meditating a war of revenge; while she existed Rome would never be safe. The embassy failed in its object; and Cato, on his return to Rome, set himself to impress his discovery on the minds of his countrymen; and being the most respected and influential man in Rome, he soon succeeded. In his first speech in the Senate he is said to have taken

from the folds of his toga a bunch of figs, still quite fresh and green. "These figs," he said, "were picked at Carthage; so near is the danger to our door." After that every speech of his in the Senate, on whatever subject, was concluded by the words, "Delenda est Carthago": "Carthage must be destroyed". In spite of some opposition, the Senate was gradually won over to Cato's view, and determined to destroy Carthage upon the first pretext. Probably the Romans were really not so much afraid of Carthage as jealous of her commercial prosperity.

**Outbreak of the Third Punic War—Unfair Treatment of Carthage, B.C. 149.**—In six years a pretext was found. Masinissa renewed his attacks, and Carthage, despairing of redress, was goaded into taking up arms (B.C. 151). Failure was the result; for her troops, now unaccustomed to war, were first surrounded by Masinissa in the desert and compelled to surrender, and then treacherously attacked and slaughtered on their march home.

Notwithstanding, the Senate at once charged the Carthaginians with having broken the treaty by going to war without leave, and the Carthaginians in despair put to death the men who had persuaded them to take up arms, and sent embassy after embassy to Rome entreating to be told what else they were to do to atone for their fault. After some time they were informed (B.C. 149) that if they sent three hundred boys of the noblest families as hostages to Rome, and obeyed the orders of the consul Cen-



ensorinus, who had already started with his army for Africa, their country and their liberties would be spared. These hard conditions they had to accept; but they thought that now, at any rate, they knew the worst. Censorinus landed. First he ordered all their ships, arms, and war material to be surrendered. This was done, and 200,000 suits of armour were brought to the Roman camp. The Carthaginians being thus disarmed and defenceless, he said that the will of the Roman people was that their city should be destroyed, and they should build another ten miles away from the sea.

**The Carthaginians defend their city—Ill-success of the Romans.**—When they heard these cruel words, an outburst of grief and fury seized the Carthaginians: to bid them leave their beloved city, the home of their nation for centuries, the shrines of their gods, and live away from the sea, cut off from their favourite trade and commerce, was too much. To the first wild outburst succeeded the calm resolution of despair. Defenceless as they were, they would not yield: if they might not live by the sea, they would die there. But time was wanted for fresh means of defence; so they succeeded in obtaining from Censorinus a respite of thirty days on pretence of sending an embassy to Rome. During these thirty days the whole population—men, women, and children—worked with heroic energy to make arms in the place of those which they had been deceived into surrendering; the women are said to

have given their long hair to make strings for the catapults. And when the time expired, the Romans found to their surprise an armed city, prepared to resist to the last. Twice they tried to storm the walls, only to be ignominiously repulsed with loss ; so they were reduced to try the effect of starvation and blockade. But the Carthaginians were able to get in provisions through their harbour ; they weakened the Roman fleet with fire ships, worried the legions with continual attacks, while fever ravaged the crowded camps of the besiegers.

**Scipio Æmilianus sent to Carthage, B.C. 147.**—For two years this went on. But at the end of the second year an able young officer, who had done good service in the siege, came home from the army as a candidate for the ædileship (see Appendix) : his name was P. Scipio Æmilianus ; he was the son of Æmilius Paullus, the conqueror of Perseus, but had been adopted by the son of Scipio Africanus. There was a general belief at Rome that no one but a Scipio could take Carthage ; so, in spite of his youth, he was unanimously elected consul and sent back to Africa.

The first thing that Scipio did when he entered on his command was to set about reorganising the army : he expelled the crowd of camp followers, which hampered all military movements and demoralised the soldiers, and restored the discipline, which had become terribly lax owing to the general discouragement. Then he began the attack in right earnest. But even he could

not make much progress by land, so he contented himself with building a double wall across the neck of the isthmus that joined Carthage to the mainland, thus completely shutting in Carthage on that side. The next thing was to shut the city also in by sea ; so he began to build a mole or breakwater in the water across the mouth of the harbour, which was not very wide. It was a tremendous work, and at first the Carthaginians laughed at his efforts ; but soon, to their dismay, the mole began to appear above the waves. But they were not to be beaten : the harbour was only separated from the sea by a narrow neck of land ; so, while the Romans were working at their mole, the whole population, unknown to them, were set to work to cut a fresh outlet ; and, when the mole was finished, the Romans were amazed to see the Carthaginian fleet sail out of a new entrance. But the ingenuity of the Carthaginians was of no avail ; in a few days a sea fight took place and their fleet was defeated. Carthage was now entirely surrounded by sea and land, and it was only a question of time when it would fall. ✓

✓ **Capture and Destruction of Carthage, B.C. 146.**—All through the winter the miserable remnant that was still alive held out. In the spring of the next year (B.C. 146) Hasdrubal, the Carthaginian commander, found himself so hard pressed that he set the town on fire and retired to the citadel Byrsa. Scipio then advanced through the narrow streets which surrounded the citadel. For nearly a week a des-

perate battle raged, as the Romans fought their way from house to house. Step by step the Carthaginians had to give way, till at last the survivors threw themselves on the mercy of Scipio and surrendered. But there were some Roman deserters who could expect no mercy; they, with Hasdrubal and his family, shut themselves up in a temple and set it on fire over their own heads. Hasdrubal himself succeeded in escaping, and surrendered to Scipio; but his wife, it is said, mounted the roof of the burning temple, and, having reproached the cowardice of her husband, threw herself and her children into the flames in the sight of the Roman army.

The city was given up to plunder and the prisoners sold into slavery, except Hasdrubal and a few others, who, having adorned the triumph of the conqueror, were allowed to live in Italy. Then by the orders of the Senate, Scipio, sorely against his will, burnt the town to the ground: for seventeen days the fire raged, and then the plough was drawn over the site of the busy streets and markets and warehouses and quays of Carthage. Its territory was made into a province called Africa, under a Roman governor, with the town of Utica as its capital.

Rome's great rival was no more; but her two chief enemies, Cato and Masinissa, did not live to see her downfall: they both died in the first year of the war. Cato aged eighty-five, Masinissa aged ninety.

**Rebellion of the Achæan League, B.C. 146.**

--The year of the conquest of Carthage witnessed also

the final conquest of Greece. Greece, you remember, had been left in a very unsettled state after the conquest of Perseus. After a time Rome sent the Achæan exiles back to their own country ; but they only made matters worse, and stirred up the minds of their countrymen against Rome. So in B.C. 146, owing to the interference of Rome in a quarrel between it and Sparta, the Achæan League declared war. But it was in vain that they tried to stand against the Roman legions. They were easily defeated, first by Metellus, the prætor of Macedonia, and, again, at the isthmus of Corinth, by the consul Mummius, a coarse, ignorant man, who had been sent from Italy to suppress the rebellion.

**Destruction of Corinth — Greece made a Roman Province.** — By order of the Senate Corinth, being a member of the League, and the richest city in Greece owing to its commerce, was destroyed and burnt. The city was full of the most splendid pictures and statues, those wonderful works of art which only the Greeks could produce. These were carried off to adorn Rome, except such as were destroyed by the ignorant soldiers, who knew nothing of their value, and are said to have used the pictures as dice-boards.

This was the only cruel act of the Romans. The leaders of the revolt were put to death ; all the states were disarmed and obliged to pay tribute, but they were left to govern themselves under the prætor of Macedonia. Under the Empire

Greece was made into a province by itself and called Achaia.

**Rebellion of Spain.**—The last thing we heard of Spain was that in the year 178 B.C. the tribes were induced by Tiberius Gracchus to submit to the rule of Rome (see page 151). In B.C. 153 some of the tribes rebelled again, and it was twenty years before the country was subdued. The Romans sent very bad generals to this war, and they were often beaten; but besides being bad generals, some of them were treacherous and cruel. One of them, Sulpicius Galba, persuaded the Lusitani to submit, a powerful tribe dwelling in what is now Portugal (B.C. 150); but when 7000 had come over to him unarmed he killed them all. For this he was accused at Rome by Cato; but after the Roman fashion he appeared in mourning, surrounded by his weeping children, and the people acquitted him out of pity.

**Viriathus becomes King of the Lusitani. B.C. 149.**—Among the few Spaniards who escaped from the massacre was a young shepherd named Viriathus. Next year the Lusitani were surrounded by a Roman army, and were about to surrender; but Viriathus warned them not to trust to the treacherous enemy. Then they made Viriathus their general, who, by directing them to steal away in small parties, eluded the vigilance of the Romans. Next, when the Roman general pursued him, Viriathus drew him into an ambush, and killed him with half his men. From that time Viriathus became the king of all the

Lusitani. He was a skilful general and brave soldier, beloved by his men, whose toils and hardships he shared, for he was one of them by birth. Year after year he fought against the Roman generals: the incapable ones he defeated over and over again; the able ones he kept at bay. At last (B.C. 141) he forced the Romans to make peace, and acknowledge him as king of the Lusitani.

**Murder of Viriathus, B.C. 139.**—But the Romans had no intention of keeping this peace, and the war soon began again. They sowed dissensions among his followers, who were growing weary of the long struggle; and Viriathus soon found himself obliged to sue for peace. The Roman consul ordered him to give up his arms; but Viriathus, remembering Galba's treachery, preferred to die fighting, and so the war went on. But it did not last long; for one night Viriathus was murdered in his bed by three of his own officers, who had been bribed by the Roman consul: to such a depth of infamy did he descend to rid himself of his brave and skilful enemy. Deprived of their king, the Lusitani could make no further resistance, and soon laid down their arms. All but the wildest parts of Spain had now submitted, except the town of Numantia.

**The Siege of Numantia, B.C. 141-133—Treachery and defeat of the Romans.**—Numantia was a town near the source of the river Durius (Douro), belonging to the tribe of Celtibēri. The Celtiberi had taken up arms to help Viriathus,

but they had been compelled to submit (B.C. 141). Numantia alone, with less than 10,000 fighting men, held out. A Roman general named Pompeius attacked the town with a large army. He was so badly beaten that he agreed to make peace. The Numantines had performed their part, by giving up hostages and money, when a new Roman general arrived: then Pompeius disavowed the peace, and the war began again (B.C. 139). The Numantines won victory after victory. Two years afterwards the Romans were guilty of a fresh act of treachery. The general Mancinus was surrounded by a small force, and only freed after making a treaty, which all his officers were made to sign. But, just as after the Caudine Forks, the Senate refused to ratify the peace. Mancinus, stripped of all his robes, was brought to the gates of Numantia as a prisoner, but the Numantines refused to receive him.

**Scipio Æmilianus takes Numantia.** — At last, the Romans, weary of the wretched story of defeat, treachery, and disgrace, turned to Scipio Æmilianus, the conqueror of Carthage, and sent him to Spain as consul (B.C. 134). As at Carthage, Scipio's first task was to bring the army into order: when discipline was restored he closed round Numantia. Even then he would not let his men fight, though more than ten times the number of the enemy; but he built fortifications right round the town to starve it into submission. The end came at last: fifteen months after Scipio took the command



Numantia surrendered, and its eight years' heroic defence is the most disgraceful page of Roman history. The town was destroyed, and the miserable remnant of its inhabitants sold into slavery. Spain was again quiet for a time.



G. Philip & Son, 32 Fleet St London.

✓

CHAPTER XVIII.

STATE OF ROME.

**The Roman Empire, B.C. 133.**—Seventy years had now passed since the struggle for mastery between Rome and Carthage had ended on the field of Zama. In those seventy years Rome had carried her conquering arms in every direction ; no state, barbarian or civilised, could resist her in the end, so overpowering were her strength and resources. Weak and divided among themselves, the peoples round the Mediterranean, her old enemy Carthage itself, the once mighty kingdom of Macedon, the mountaineers of Spain, had fallen one by one, and Rome had established an empire over them very like the empire which England has established over the peoples of India. ✓ The provinces which Rome now ruled were Sicily (pages 119, 142), Corsica and Sardinia (page 122), the two provinces of Spain (page 151) Macedonia (page 161), and Africa, that is, the territory round the ruins of Carthage (see page 169). To these was added very soon (B.C. 129) Asia, not, of course, the whole continent, but the kingdom of

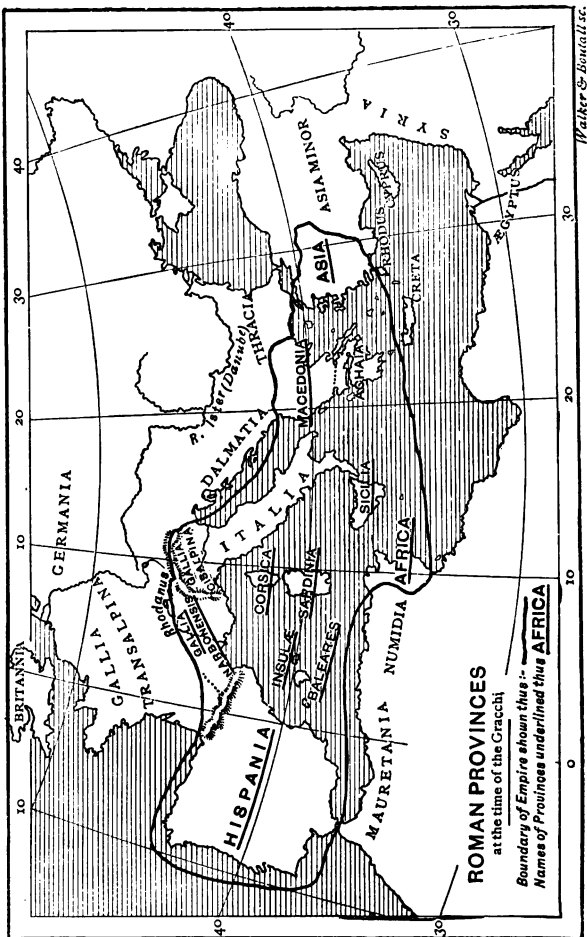
Pergamus, left as a legacy to Rome by its king, Attalus III., nephew of Eumenes; (B.C. 123) the Balearic Isles; and (B.C. 121) a province in Transalpine Gaul, at the mouth of the Rhodanus (Rhône), called properly Gallia Narbonensis, from its capital Narbo, but often simply "Provincia," the Province, whence comes the modern French name for the district, Provence. Lastly there were some kingdoms dependent on Rome, but at present left by her unsubdued—Numidia, Syria, and Egypt. ✓

**Growth of Luxury at Rome.**—But the Rome that ruled this wide empire was very different from the old Rome that fought the Samnites, Pyrrhus, and Hannibal. The old stern simplicity that had carried Rome through all those dangers was gone. The Romans were growing more refined, but at the same time more luxurious. Wealth was pouring in from the conquered countries; Roman families that in old days had been content with homely earthenware now loaded their tables with services of silver plate, and, instead of the old simple fare, sea and land were ransacked for delicacies for their banquets. The belief in the simple Roman religion was dying out; new and licentious forms of worship were introduced from Greece and the East. In B.C. 186 the Senate itself was obliged to interfere, and to put down the wild orgies in honour of the god Bacchus.

**Slavery.**—Slavery, too, was growing to a frightful extent; and the lot of a slave was very different to what it had been in the early days. Rome's victorious

wars had brought numbers of prisoners to the market. when a rising of the Sardinians was crushed (B.C. 177) so many thousands of them were for sale that "cheap as a Sardinian" passed into a proverb. The wholesale employment of slaves was one of the bad lessons that the Romans learnt from Carthage and the nations of the East. Everywhere the labour of slaves was taking the place of the labour of freemen. Instead of the many little farms, each supporting its family of freemen, there were now huge dreary estates belonging to the nobles and tended by slaves; estates far larger than permitted by the Licinian law (see page 69), which had long ago become a dead letter. They worked in huge gangs, often loaded with chains, and at night were kept in an underground dungeon called *ergastulum*. So great was the number of these wretched and desperate creatures that they were becoming a source of danger to the state. In Sicily, indeed, the country was quite unsafe for travellers; and about this time they broke out into open rebellion. One hundred thousand banded together and made one of their number king, and for four years resisted the generals and armies of Rome (B.C. 135-131).

**Gladiatorial Shows.**—One great sign of the degeneracy of these times was the cruel gladiatorial shows, in which wretched men, slaves, or prisoners of war were forced to fight and kill one another for the enjoyment of the Roman populace. This custom, which seems so horrible to us, is said to have come from Etruria; originally gladiators were only ex-



hibited at funerals, but gradually they became part of the public performances in the circus, together with wild-beast fights. Gladiators generally fought in pairs, and when one was vanquished, the spectators, if they wished him slain, held down their thumbs in silence, and the deathstroke was given by the victor.

The giving these shows was part of the duties of the magistrates, called *ædiles* (see Appendix). The *ædileship* was a lower office to which a man was elected before he became *prætor* and *consul*. The *ædiles* naturally wished to make themselves as popular as possible, that they might not lose their election to the *prætorship* and *consulship*; so they used to spend vast sums of money, and often ruined themselves, to give as magnificent shows as possible.

**The Influence of Greece.**—Nothing worked such a change on the Romans as the influence of Greece; for the Greeks were very clever and famous for their wonderful writings, and pictures, and statues. And so when their conquest of the East revealed all these treasures to the Romans the effect was magical. Everything Greek was now the fashion at Rome: as a Roman poet afterwards wrote, "Captive Greece took captive her fierce conqueror". The Romans began to imitate the Greek writings, and so the foundation was laid of that famous Roman literature which is still read and admired. Ennius (B.C. 240-170) is called the Father of Roman Poetry; he was a friend of Scipio Africanus, who, as you have read, was a great admirer of Greek writings; and he wrote an account

of the second Punic war in imitation of Homer. Thus Rome owed a great debt to Greece. But there was another side of the picture: the Greeks of this time were degenerate and frivolous; their clever men, or philosophers, were fond of discussing about religion and right and wrong, and often sought rather to show their own cleverness in arguing, than to teach what they really thought right. And so, owing to the teaching of these philosophers, the Romans began to lose their belief in religion and their old simple notions of right and wrong.

**Cato the Censor.**—There was one man at Rome who saw all this change with sorrow, and fought hard against it. This was Cato (M. Porcius Cato), the enemy of Carthage. He was a true Roman of the old stamp, and hated everything Greek, though even he in his old age began to study Greek writings; but he could not bring back the simple old days for which he sighed. Cato had fought in the second Punic war with distinction, and you will remember his victory at Thermopylæ over Antiochus' army (B.C. 191). Afterwards (B.C. 184), he was Censor, and was so strict in punishing the faults of his fellow-citizens, that ever afterwards he was known as Cato the Censor. ✓

**The Bad Government of the Senate.**—From the time that the Licinian Laws ended the old quarrel between the Patricians and Plebeians, more than 200 years ago, you have heard little about internal troubles at Rome; for, during all those years of

danger and difficulty, while Rome was fighting for her existence, the Senate had governed wisely and well, and the people had interfered but little. But now that the danger was over and the Roman character was changed, it is not surprising that a change came also over the government. The nobles, corrupted by the prevailing luxury, and seeing the state secure from all enemies, no longer thought it their duty to care for the state; their only object was to make themselves rich by the spoil of enemies or the plunder of oppressed provinces, and to keep all the offices to themselves, and not to let anyone who was not a noble be elected. So the government of the Senate had been growing bad, and you will see that it continued to grow worse and worse. Throughout this century bad generals were often put in command, and Roman armies shamefully beaten, as we have seen in Spain and at Carthage, till for very shame the Senate had at last to select a good soldier to end the war.

**The Popular Party.**—The Popular Party, too, which had so patriotically refrained from interfering with the Senate in the work of preserving the state, was now greatly changed. In old days it consisted mainly of the class of yeomen farmers, tilling their own little farms in the neighbourhood of Rome and Latium; but owing to the ravages of Hannibal (see p. 151), and then the increased employment of slaves, this class had disappeared. In its place was a rabble who crowded into Rome and other towns: this rabble



had no idea of political power, except to use it for its own ends, and hated military service, and so made bad soldiers; thus, with bad soldiers and bad generals, it is not surprising that the Roman armies were often beaten.

Thus though the rule of the Senate was becoming bad and selfish, the Popular Party was in a still worse state, and little good could be expected from it. At present it had no leader, and therefore could do nothing at all.

**The Discontent of the Italians.**—There was another source of coming trouble. The Latins, who had been so loyal in the hour of danger, and the other Italians, who now formed the greater part of the armies of Rome, were growing discontented and beginning to demand equal rights of citizenship with the Romans, and a share in the benefits of the empire. It was a fair demand, for there was now very little difference between the Romans and Italians; but the Romans, especially the Popular Party, were selfish, and would not let the Italians share their privileges. How it all ended you will see later on.

**The Oppression of the Provinces.**—Most to be pitied of all were the provinces. You will remember how, when the Romans conquered Sicily, they adopted the notion that a province was merely a country to get money from: and as their empire grew, they carried out this principle only too faithfully. The unhappy provincials, utterly unable to stand against the might of Rome, had no choice

but to submit. First there was the regular tribute, generally a land-tax: this in itself was fair enough, but it was collected in a most unfair way. It was the custom of the Roman government not to collect the taxes of the provinces by its own servants, but to put them up to auction; whoever bid the highest for a tax paid the sum which he bid to the government, and kept to himself all that he could collect from the province, such men were called publicans (*publicāni*, from *publicum*, "revenue"); and as they of course wished to make as much money as possible, they were most cruel and unjust in their exactions. You will remember the publicans of the Gospels so despised by the Jews: these were not the publicani themselves but their servants.

Secondly, there were the extortions of the Roman governors, who usually considered that they had only come to the province to make money, and pay the debts which they had incurred at Rome, especially in giving the shows to gain their election; and having unlimited power, they plundered their subjects unmercifully. It was useless for the provincials to accuse their oppressors before the Senate, for the Senate was composed of men who had been or would be governors of provinces, and, sad to say, they were also ready to take bribes. It was said that a Roman governor had to make three fortunes out of his province: one to pay his debts, one to bribe his judges, and one to live on for the rest of his life.

Sometimes, but very rarely, a governor was pro-

secuted and convicted. The most famous case was that of Verres, governor of Sicily, who was accused by the great orator Cicero (B.C. 70). By his rapacity and brutality, he is said to have injured Sicily more than the slave war. So tremendous was the indictment of Cicero, that Verres, without attempting any defence, left Rome and went into voluntary banishment.

**Conclusion.**—To sum up, Rome was all-powerful over a great empire, but used her power to oppress her subjects. The nobles were rich, luxurious, and selfish, and so unfit to govern; the Popular Party was a city rabble, and huge slave-worked estates had taken the place of the small farmers; lastly, the Italians were clamouring for the Roman citizenship.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### *THE GRACCHI—PARTY STRIFE BEGINS AGAIN.*

	B. C.
Tribuneship and murder of Tiberius Gracchus, .	133
Death of Scipio Æmilianus, . . . .	129
First Tribuneship of Caius Gracchus, . . . .	123
Death of Caius Gracchus, . . . . .	121

**The Gracchi.**—At length a man arose who tried to find a remedy for the evils of the state, a young noble named Tiberius Gracchus.

Tiberius Gracchus, who has been already mentioned as having brought back the fierce Spanish tribes to their allegiance (B.C. 178), married Cornelia, the daughter of the great (Scipio Africanus), and died leaving her a widow with two sons, Tiberius and Caius, who was ten years the younger. Cornelia was a most able and accomplished lady, and devoted all her life and energies to educating her boys, and training them to be good and useful citizens of their country. One day a great Roman lady, who cared for nothing but dress and amusements, was visiting Cornelia; she showed her all the splendid ornaments she had on, and asked to see Cornelia's jewels. Cornelia did not refuse, but sent for her two boys, and when they came into the room from their studies she said, "There

are my jewels". When his education was finished, Tiberius, like all other young nobles, began his career by serving in the army. He fought at the siege of Carthage, where he was the first to mount the walls, and in the Numantine war; it is said that when riding through Etruria on his way from Rome to join the army in Spain, he was so struck by the wretched appearance of the huge slave-tended tracts of land, that he determined when he became a statesman at Rome to get the land back again for the people. After his return to Rome, being of Plebeian family, he succeeded in being elected a tribune B.C. 133.

**The Agrarian Law of Tiberius Gracchus, B.C. 133.**—Tiberius now brought forward an agrarian law (see page 47). It was simply that the Licinian law should be again enforced; that is, that no one should have more than 500 jugera, and that the spare land thus recovered by the state should be divided among the poor citizens. This sounds at first fair enough; but it must be remembered that it was now nearly 250 years since the Licinian laws had been passed, and during nearly all that time they had been disregarded, and people had possessed estates of more land than 500 jugera, and these estates had been bought and sold just like private property. So though Tiberius' object in dividing up the great estates was very good and patriotic, this was a most unfair and violent way of carrying it out; for in many cases land would be taken from a man for which he or his ancestors had paid a large sum of money. The

nobles, of course, opposed the law might and main; but as you have been already told (page 90) the Assembly of the People was able to pass laws without the consent of the Senate; another tribune, however, a Plebeian noble on the side of the Senate, named Octavius, put his "veto" on the law, that is, forbade its being proceeded with.

**His illegal action.**—Tiberius ought now to have dropped his law, for Octavius was acting quite legally; but he was so sure that he was in the right, and so impatient, that he would not give in; so he persuaded the people to pass a law in their Assembly deposing Octavius from his office. This was his first unlawful act; it succeeded for the time, for the agrarian law was passed by the Assembly; and a commission of three men (*triumviri*), Tiberius, his brother Caius, and his father-in-law Appius Claudius, was appointed to carry it out. But Tiberius' year of office was drawing to a close, and he knew that as soon as it was over the nobles would prosecute him for the deposition of Octavius. (Now the law at Rome was that no one could be elected tribune a second time till after an interval of ten years: however Tiberius determined to brave the law, and put himself up for re-election.) This was his second illegal act.

**His murder.**—The result was that on the voting day there was a riot; the nobles, armed with sticks and clubs, marched down into the Forum, the adherents of Tiberius fled in all direc-

tions, and the unhappy tribune, stumbling in his flight, was felled by a blow from a club and his body thrown into the Tiber. So perished Tiberius Gracchus, a victim to his own rashness and folly in trying to carry out a good object by unlawful means. He was a man of gentle nature and noble character, and there can be little doubt that he thought he was acting for the good of his country; but his action showed the people their strength and set the example of unlawful acts, and thus began the struggle between the people and the nobles by which Rome was torn for the next hundred years, and which only ended in both the people and the nobles having to submit to the military rule of an emperor.

*Comp. of language*

**Scipio Æmilianus, B.C. 129.**—The people were thoroughly cowed by the death of their champion, and for a time the nobles were triumphant. About this time Scipio Æmilianus returned to Rome from the conquest of Numantia. He had married a sister of the Gracchi and was known to be a man of moderate views, so everyone at Rome looked to him to get the state out of its present troubles. Scipio sympathised with the people, but he was shocked by the illegal acts of Tiberius, and felt that he deserved his fate: he also sympathised with the Italians in their demand for the Roman citizenship, and probably thought Tiberius' law unfair to them, for the land would have been distributed to Roman citizens only. At any rate he opposed the carrying out of the law; but before he could effect anything to

heal the troubles of the state he was found one morning dead in his bed. Many believed, but probably without any reason, that he had been poisoned.

**Caius Gracchus becomes Tribune, B.C. 123.**

—Caius Gracchus was serving under Scipio in Spain at the time of his brother's death. He returned to Rome to serve on the Land Commission. He was too young at present to come forward as champion of the people and avenger of his brother, but men felt that he was only biding his time. In B.C. 126 he began his public career by going to the province of Sardinia as *quæstor* (see Appendix). The Senate, wishing to keep him away from Rome, tried to prolong his appointment; but he returned without orders (B.C. 124), and was elected tribune for the next year. The struggle had begun again.

Caius Gracchus was an abler and more far-seeing statesman than his brother, but his character was not so noble, nor his motives so unselfish. Tiberius had wished to put an end to a great evil, the huge slave-tended estates; Caius' object was to wreak his vengeance on his brother's murderers, the nobles, and to take the government out of their hands and give it to the people, and so, perhaps, to win for himself the supreme power at Rome.

**The Laws of Caius Gracchus.**—(1) (He revived the old law that no citizen could be put to death without an appeal to the people;) and so drove into exile the surviving consul of the year when Tiberius was killed.



(2) The next law of Caius was a most foolish one, and did more harm than almost any other law ever passed at Rome. There was very little corn grown in Italy, most of the large estates being used for raising cattle; what was required was imported from Sicily and Africa. Caius thought that he would make the people very fond of him if he gave them this corn cheap; so he proposed a law (that the state should buy <sup>it</sup> and sell it to the poor citizens below cost price.) The law was carried; and as a natural consequence the city was filled more than ever with a mob of idle vagabonds who would not work, but considered they had a right to be fed by the state. And the law could not be abolished, for no statesman would dare to do such an unpopular thing as to ask the Comitia to repeal it. ✓

✓ (3) Another very important law was passed by Caius, to weaken the Senate and gain himself fresh allies. It was the custom for courts composed of senators to try criminal cases instead of the people in their Comitia, who really ought have tried them, but were not fitted to do so. (Caius took this privilege from the senators and gave it to the rich traders.) These rich traders were called *equites* (knights), because in old days everyone who had a certain income served in the cavalry, not in the infantry. At the present time the cavalry of the Roman army were supplied by the allies, but the rich men still kept the name of equites as a mark of their rank. This of course made the equites support Caius; but the law did harm,

because, though the senators had not judged very fairly, the equites made still worse judges; for as their chief aim was to make money, they were much readier than the senators to take bribes.

(4) Lastly, he tried to carry further his brother's work of improving the condition of the people by new means. Tiberius' land law was re-enacted; roads were also built through the country districts and colonies founded in Italy, and also for the first time outside Italy in the part of Transalpine Gaul, which had just been conquered, and, thirdly, in Africa on the site of the ill-starred city of Carthage.)

**Caius Gracchus takes up the Cause of the Italians—The People turn against him.**—All these laws took some time to pass, and Caius succeeded in getting himself re-elected tribune (B.C. 122), being in this respect more fortunate than his brother. He now seemed triumphant. The people were on his side, and also the equites; he seemed to be able to do anything he liked. So he proposed a law which was really the wisest of all his laws; (it was to give the full Roman citizenship to all the Italians.) But at once the selfish Roman mob turned upon their champion, and said that it was an invasion of their rights. Caius was obliged to drop the law; the nobles of course were delighted at the blow which he had received.

Then Caius left Rome to superintend the founding of the colony at Carthage. In his absence, the Senate persuaded another tribune to outbid him for the

people's favour by passing a law in the Comitia founding *more colonies in Italy*. This still further weakened his popularity; and when he returned from Carthage and tried to be elected tribune a third time he was unsuccessful.

**His Death.**—Then his enemies began to attack his measures; the Senate said that it was impious to found a colony on the accursed soil of Carthage, and many of the people believed it; so it was proposed that the Comitia should repeal the law. On the day of voting there was a riot. Then the friends of Caius collected an armed force and seized the Aventine Hill; next day the nobles, aided by the ungrateful equites, attacked and stormed the Aventine. Caius fled, followed by a slave, and got safely across the river; but finding escape hopeless, he bade the slave kill him. His body was found by the enemy, dragged through the streets, and thrown into the Tiber; and about three thousand of his adherents were slain. So perished Caius Gracchus, and the people by their selfishness and fickleness lost their able leader. He had tried to overthrow the government of the Senate, and put in its place the government of the people led by himself. But if the Senate were bad rulers, the people were worse, and so the attempt failed. The struggle went on for many more years, and the Senate were not overthrown till Julius Cæsar arose, and he overthrew it not by the votes of the fickle Roman mob, but by the sword of the legionary.

For the present the Senate regained its power; the

laws of the Gracchi were gradually abolished except those about the equites being judges and the corn distribution; and ten years afterwards a law was passed, that the land possessed by a man, however large, should be his absolute property.

The poor mother, Cornelia, broken-hearted by the loss of her two sons and the ingratitude of the Roman people, left Rome and lived in her country villa; but in time the people repented of their conduct, and began again to look upon Tiberius and Caius as their greatest champions, and when Cornelia died they set up a statue to her with the title, "The Mother of the Gracchi".



CORNELIA, THE MOTHER OF THE GRACCHI.

## CHAPTER XX.

### *WARS AGAINST JUGURTHA, AND THE CIMBRI AND TEUTONES—RISE AND FALL OF MARIUS.*

	B.C.
Jugurtha usurps the Throne of Numidia, . . .	118
Invasion of the Cimbri, . . . . .	118
War against Jugurtha, . . . . .	112
Jugurtha at Rome, . . . . .	111
Victory of Metellus in the Desert, . . . . .	109
First Consulship of Marius, . . . . .	107
Capture of Jugurtha and End of the War in Numidia, . . . . .	106
Battle of Arausio, . . . . .	105
Marius Consul five times in succession, . . . . .	104-100
Battle of Aquæ Sextiæ, . . . . .	102
Battle of Vercellæ, . . . . .	101
Riot at Rome and Fall of Marius, . . . . .	100

### **Usurpation of Jugurtha in Numidia, B.C.**

118.—The Senate was now for a time secure at home, but soon had a troublesome war in Numidia. There Jugurtha—a grandson of Rome's old ally, Masinissa—a brave and energetic man, but treacherous, like all Numidians—had seized the throne. The rightful heirs were his cousins, two young princes, of whom he was guardian; but he seized and murdered one, and made war on the other, who was called Adherbal.

The Romans, being appealed to, decided that Jugurtha and Adherbal should divide the country. But in a few years (B.C. 112) Jugurtha again attacked Adherbal and besieged him in his capital Cirta. Adherbal again appealed to Rome, and fresh embassies were sent to Africa; but Jugurtha continued the siege, Cirta surrendered, and Adherbal was killed in cold blood, with all the garrison, which included many Italians. At this the people at Rome were furious and forced the Senate to declare war. So an army was sent to Numidia; but Jugurtha knew how to deal with the Romans, for he had served in the Roman army before Numantia, and he soon bribed the general to make peace.

**Jugurtha at Rome, B.C. 111.**—The fury of the people was now greater than ever, and Jugurtha was ordered to come to Rome to answer for his conduct. He came; but by his knowledge of Roman politics, and by bribing the principal senators, he escaped punishment, and actually caused a Numidian prince living at Rome to be murdered from fear that he might be a possible rival. This was too much, and he was ordered to leave Rome. “Thou purchasable city,” he is said to have exclaimed on his departure, “soon wilt thou perish, if thou canst only find a purchaser.”

A fresh army was sent to Numidia, but the soldiers were, as usual, disorganised and the general unskilful and open to bribes. Next year the army was surrounded in the desert and sent under the yoke.

**Metellus in Numidia—Battle in the Desert, B.C. 109.**—(Luckily the new consul sent to Numidia Metellus,) was an able and upright man, though one of the proudest of the nobles. He made great preparations to improve the state of the army, and took out with him many new officers. Among these officers was a rough soldier, named Caius Marius, a native of Arpinum, who had risen from the ranks ; he was already nearly fifty years old, and had been all his life in the army ; he had served under Scipio at the same time as Jugurtha before Numantia, where he had shown great bravery, and Scipio had foretold great things of him. Marius had also taken part in politics, and had been elected a tribune some time before by the influence of Metellus.

Jugurtha, according to his usual plan of fighting, enticed the Roman army into the desert, and then attacked it with the famous Numidian cavalry. But Metellus was too strong for him, and succeeded in beating off his attacks, though the Romans suffered great loss. Jugurtha, who knew how powerful Rome really was, began to despair, and tried to make peace. Metellus made him give up several cities, with arms and elephants ; then he told him that he must surrender unconditionally : Jugurtha of course refused, and the war went on again.

**Marius stands for the Consulship.**—Metellus, in spite of his victory, could accomplish nothing decisive amid the burning deserts, so Marius, who had again greatly distinguished himself, thought that he should

like to try what he could do. He asked Metellus for leave to go to Rome and become a candidate for the consulship. Metellus at first laughed at him for his presumption. "It will be time enough for you to be consul," he said, "when my son is old enough to be your colleague." But Marius persisted, and Metellus was obliged to let him go; and the people at Rome had heard so much of his bravery and skill in Numidia that, though he was not a noble, they elected him. When Metellus heard that he had been superseded by his own legatus he shed tears of vexation. On his return to Rome he was given a triumph for the battle in the desert, and took the name Numidicus, but Numidia was as unconquered as when he went there.

**Marius Consul—Surrender of Jugurtha, B.C. 107-6.**—Marius took with him large reinforcements, and soon drove Jugurtha out of the civilised parts of Numidia. Next year the desert warfare began again; several times Marius penetrated a long way into the desert and beat off the attacks of Jugurtha in some desperate battles, in which all his skill was required to prevent the Roman army from being overwhelmed.

But the end seemed as far off as ever; when it was suddenly brought about by the treachery of Jugurtha's ally and father-in-law Bocchus, King of the neighbouring country of Mauretania, who promised to betray him into the hands of a Roman officer. For this mission a cavalry officer, called Lucius Cornelius Sulla, was chosen; it was a most



dangerous enterprise, for Bocchus might have again turned traitor, and it was a difficult matter to deceive such a man as Jugurtha. But Sulla was a man of the greatest bravery and coolness. With Bocchus' help, Jugurtha was enticed into an ambush and brought a prisoner to the Roman camp. So the long war was over at last. As a reward of his perfidy, Bocchus obtained the desert part of Numidia; the eastern part was given to another prince, who ruled as a dependent of Rome. Marius returned to Rome, and in his triumph the unhappy Jugurtha, who had successfully defied the arms of Rome and only yielded to treachery, was led in chains in all his royal robes; he was then stripped and thrown naked into the dungeon under the Capitol. "Oh, what a cold bath," he exclaimed. For six days he lingered till cold and hunger put an end to his sufferings. It is said that Sulla felt very jealous of the honours of Marius, for he considered that by his daring enterprise he had done much more to bring the war to an end.

**The Cimbri in Gaul—The Romans defeated at Arausio, B.C. 105.**—The conqueror of Jugurtha now found himself called to face another and far more difficult task. The new province of Gallia Narbonensis suddenly (B.C. 109) found itself assailed by a strange and fierce tribe called the Cimbri, tall, fair-haired, blue-eyed barbarians of German nationality, who for some unknown reason had started southwards from their settlements in the north of Germany, carrying their families and goods with them

in waggons. Army after army was defeated by these formidable invaders; and at last (B.C. 105), in a terrible battle at Arausio (Orange) on the Rhodanus, 60,000 Romans perished.

**Marius elected Consul a second time—The Cimbri go off to Spain, B.C. 104.**—The alarm at Rome was increased tenfold, and there was absolutely nothing to prevent the barbarians crossing the Alps. Just at this time Marius was returning from Africa after his victory over Jugurtha. The people naturally turned to their victorious champion: the nobles did not dare to make any objection; so on the very day of his triumph he was, contrary to the law of Rome, elected consul a second time to save Rome from the Cimbri, and re-elected year after year till his task was done.

Fortunately the Cimbri turned away from the road to Italy. For some reason they crossed the Pyrenees into Spain. Thus the immediate danger passed away, and Marius had time to train his soldiers before the shock of battle came.

**Marius reorganises the Roman Army.**—Marius, from the time he first became consul against Jugurtha, made a great many changes in the Roman army. Previously every Roman citizen had been a soldier; but according to the old custom only those who had a certain amount of money were allowed to serve in the legions, the poorer classes had to be light troops; and the same arrangement existed among the Italian allies.

Marius did away with all these distinctions. In future no one was compelled to serve in the army, but



ROMAN LEGIONARY.

any citizen who wished to take up soldiering as a regular profession, could enter the army and

become a legionary, whether he had any property or not. The result was a standing army of professional soldiers quite distinct from the citizens, men hardened by service, inured to hardships, dangers, and privations; men who could face fierce barbarians in Gaul and cross the sandy deserts of Numidia. As soon as Rome had found the right sort of men for her soldiers, we hear no more of continual defeats and disgraces. The new army saved Rome; but it was devoted to its general and not to the state, and, as we shall see, it gradually became stronger than the state itself, and at last became its master.

Marius made various other changes in the drill and organisation of the legion. It was he also who made the famous eagle the standard.

**Marius' Second, Third, and Fourth Consulships, B.C. 104-102—He defeats the Teutones at Aquæ Sextiæ, B.C. 102.**—During two consulships (B.C. 104, 103), Marius lay with his newly organised army in Transalpine Gaul unmolested by the barbarians, who were still in Spain. But he did not allow his men to be idle; he employed them in making useful public works, especially a canal near Massilia, called from him the Fossa Mariana. At the end of B.C. 103 he was elected to his fourth consulship; and now at last the Cimbri appeared, joined by another tribe called the Teutones, and the invasion of Italy began. The Teutones advanced against Marius, while the Cimbri marched round the north of the Alps to penetrate into Italy on the east. Marius re-

mained in his fortified camp, and, though attacked by the enemy, kept his men within the ramparts.

Wearied by his obstinate defence, the barbarians gave up the attempt, and marched away towards the road to Italy. Six days the host took passing the camp, with their waggons laden with spoil, women, and children, and many were the taunts they hurled at its defenders, asking them whether they had any messages for their wives at Rome. But still Marius would not stir. When the last of the horde had passed, he cautiously followed, and at *Aquæ Sextiæ* (*Aix*) near *Marseilles* he gave them battle. Here the skill of Marius and the steady training he had given his army prevailed. The whole tribe of the *Teutones*, over 100,000 men, was destroyed, and the women killed themselves rather than fall into the hands of their conquerors.

**Marius' Fifth Consulship—He defeats the Cimbri at Vercellæ, B.C. 101.**—Meanwhile the *Cimbri* had crossed the Alps in the north-east, and were at last on the soil of Italy. There was an army in *Cisalpine Gaul* under Marius' colleague in the consulship, *Catulus*; but the soldiers were seized with panic, and fled across the *Padus* (*Po*). So the fertile plain of *Cisalpine Gaul* between the Alps and the *Padus* was abandoned to the barbarians, who ravaged it without mercy.

Marius had gone to Rome after his victory over the *Teutones*, where he was elected consul for the fifth time. In the following summer (B.C.

101) he joined Catulus, and the united armies crossed the Padus. Near the town of Vercellæ, between the modern towns of Turin and Milan, the battle was fought. Marius again was victorious; the Cimbri, like the Teutones, were utterly destroyed. Thus the danger which for the last few years had hung like a nightmare over Rome was finally dispelled. Marius, the new saviour of Rome, celebrated a magnificent triumph for the double victory. In the procession was carried the best of the spoil which the barbarians had spent so many years in amassing, and with the spoil walked in chains the gigantic king of the Teutones, a man of such strength that he is said to have been able to leap over six horses at once.

**The Sixth Consulship of Marius—He joins the Leaders of the Popular Party, B.C. 100.**—But as the people watched and cheered the triumphal procession, they felt that they were triumphing not over the barbarians, but also over the Senate. The victor of Aquæ Sextiæ and Vercellæ was one of themselves; he was supplying the place of the lost Gracchi, and leading them in triumph against the nobles. Marius had no wish to mix in politics; he felt that his place was the camp, not the city. But the Senate tried to make light of his triumph, and said that the victory of Vercellæ was due to Catulus; and the young aristocrats laughed at his boorish manners and insulted him in the Senate. So a bitter feeling of indignation and revenge forced him to take an active part against the Senate. He made an

alliance with Saturninus, a clever but reckless man, then leading the Popular Party. Saturninus was elected tribune of the people ; and Marius was elected consul for the sixth time for B.C. 100, this time without sufficient cause for breaking the law. At first all went well ; Saturninus brought forward two laws—one for making the price of corn still lower, and the other for giving lands in Africa to Marius' veterans. The laws were passed, but only after a riot at the Comitia, in which the veterans soon carried the day. Then they began to arrange for the elections for the next year. Saturninus was to be again tribune, and his friend Glaucia consul.

### **Riot at Rome and Fall of Marius, B.C. 100.**

—On the day of the elections there was as usual a riot, and the senatorial candidate for the consulship was actually beaten to death. Then the Senate solemnly called on the consuls to save the republic. Marius began to waver : he felt that his friends had gone too far, and that it was his duty as consul to obey the command of the Senate. So he put himself at the head of the forces of the nobles, and engaged his former friends in a regular battle in the Forum. Saturninus and his followers were driven into the Capitol, where they were forced to surrender to their old ally Marius. He tried to save their lives by confining them as prisoners in the senate house ; but the furious nobles tore off the roof and pelted them to death with tiles.

Thus, for a third time, the Senate was victorious

over the Popular Party. But Marius found that he was utterly ruined. His old friends would not forgive him for having betrayed their champions to death; his new friends the nobles, having used him as their tool, had now no more need of him, and treated him with more contempt than ever. Unable to endure the humiliation of his position, the veteran general went away to the East; but the story says that he still treasured up in his heart a prophecy once given him that he would be consul seven times. The seventh consulship was still to come, and when it came his revenge would be terrible.



Two Laurs



## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE SOCIAL WAR.

	B.C.
Mithridates becomes King of Pontus, . . . .	121
Aggressions of Mithridates, . . . .	92
The Laws of Drusus, . . . .	91
The Social War, . . . .	90-89
The Laws of Sulpicius—Sulla marches on Rome	
—Flight of Marius, . . . .	88

Drusus tries to give the Citizenship to the Italians, B.C. 91.—After their defeat by the Senate and the loss of their leaders, the Popular Party remained quiet at Rome. But the Italians were now becoming louder and more persistent in their demands for the Roman citizenship, and threatened that they would go to war if Rome would not give way.

In the year B.C. 91 a new friend appeared for them at Rome: a young noble named Livius Drusus, a man of high character, had been elected tribune of the people, and manfully set himself to try to heal the troubles of the state. To win the favour of the Popular Party, he proposed and passed the usual laws about distributing corn cheap, about giving land to the poor, and founding colonies. He also passed another law about the judges, by which only one-half were to

be equites, the other half senators; this he thought would put an end to the quarrel between the equites and the Senate, which had been caused by the law of Caius Gracchus. There was much opposition to these laws; but they were carried, though only after the usual rioting. (Then, finally, he proposed the law giving the citizenship to the Italians;) but, just as in the time of Caius Gracchus, the selfish Popular Party were against the law, and as the day of voting approached the excitement grew greater and greater. Suddenly one evening Drusus perished at his own door, stabbed, it was said, by the dagger of an assassin, as he was returning home escorted by a crowd of followers. The law was immediately dropped. With Drusus died all hope of peacefully settling the question.

**The Social War—First Campaign, B.C. 90.**  
—In a few months the storm burst and the standard of the revolt was raised. The first to take the field were the Marsi, a small mountain tribe in the centre of Italy; so the war is sometimes called the “Marsian war”. They were soon joined by the Samnites, who had not forgotten their old struggles against Rome, and by most of the other tribes of South Italy. The insurgents no longer wanted to be made citizens of Rome; they resolved to make themselves into a new nation independent of Rome. They chose a new capital for their nation, a country town called Corfinium, to which they gave the name of Italica: there they made a Senate like that at Rome, and elected

consuls and prætors and struck a new Italian coinage. Meanwhile they strained every nerve to bring into the field a force able to cope with the gigantic power of Rome.

At first the Romans, suddenly weakened by the loss of their Italian soldiers, could barely hold their own. They still held several fortresses in the revolted countries, and their first object was to relieve them. Their great general Marius had returned to Rome from the East, expecting by some brilliant victory to blot out all recollection of his failure in politics. But, according to the usual Roman custom, the command was given to the consuls, who were not great generals.

**Ill-success of the Romans.**—One consul was in Latium, fighting against the Marsi and their neighbours, and Marius was given a command under him: the other consul confronted the Samnites in Campania. In his army was Sulla, the captor of Jugurtha. There was desperate fighting, but no decisive battle. The Marsi were repulsed, but the consul was killed, and the army only saved from destruction by the skill of Marius. In Campania, also, the Romans lost several towns, and were defeated by the Samnites in spite of some brilliant exploits of Sulla. The Etruscans and Umbrians in the North, encouraged by these events, showed signs of joining the insurgents; and political quarrels were still going on at Rome. The Senate, therefore, felt that they had better try gentle means. So, in December, a law was passed giving the citizenship to all Italians who had remained faithful, and

also to anyone who should submit within two months. But the Italians might only be enrolled in eight of the thirty-five tribes, and as each tribe had one vote in the Assembly of the People it gave them very little real power. At this the Etruscans and Umbrians returned to their loyalty, and the Italians were weakened by many defections; but they still determined to resist.

**Second Campaign, B.C. 89—Sulla in Command.**—The Romans made great efforts during the winter to collect forces sufficient to crush the revolt. When they came to appoint new commanders, Marius was left out altogether. The people seem to have expected more of him than he accomplished, and now thought him too old. To add to his disappointment, his old officer Sulla, though not consul, was made commander-in-chief in Campania. From this point began the famous rivalry between these two men. L. Cornelius Sulla was the very opposite of Marius: he was of noble birth and good education, well versed in Greek literature. He was equally at home both in politics and war, and joined a most wonderful military ability with an absolutely cool daring. But he was a man wholly cold-blooded, without scruple or pity. In figure he was tall and athletic, with piercing blue eyes.

**Suppression of the Revolt.**—The tide now turned. Sulla drove the Samnites out of all Campania except a few towns, and followed them into the heart of Samnium, where he defeated them near their

capital Bovianum, which he took. In central Italy, though one of the consuls was killed, the Marsi were repeatedly defeated; and the other consul, Pompeius Strabo, the father of the great Pompeius, won a great victory under the walls of Asculum in Picēnum over 60,000 Italians who were trying to relieve it. Asculum was compelled by famine to surrender. Its leading citizens were put to death; the rest lost all their property.

All was now over; one by one the different tribes laid down their arms and accepted the conditions offered by the Senate. Early next year (B.C. 88) Italica surrendered, and became again the simple country town Corfinium. Only the Samnites remained in arms. Those brave mountaineers, remembering their ancient struggles with Rome, resolved to resist to the last.

**Mithridates, King of Pontus.**—At this point the Samnites were saved for a time, and the whole course of events changed by alarming news from the East, to explain which we must go back a little. On the south-east shore of the Black Sea (Pontus Euxinus) was a barbarian kingdom, called by the Greeks the country on the Pontus, and afterwards simply Pontus. In the year B.C. 121 a boy of eleven years succeeded to the throne, who afterwards became famous as Mithridātes the Great. Though a barbarian, he had received a Greek education, and he is said to have been able to speak twenty-five different languages.

his accession, owing to his youth, he was threatened

on all sides by the plots of designing relations, but he escaped all dangers, unscrupulously murdering his adversaries, even his own mother and brother. He was a man of immense stature and strength, skilled in horsemanship and all athletic exercises. As soon as he was firmly settled on the throne he began to extend his dominions in all directions. This soon brought him into collision with Rome, which was now all powerful in Asia Minor. So (B.C. 92) Sulla, who was in Cilicia, was told by the Senate to order Mithridates to surrender his conquests, and Mithridates submitted. But, taking advantage of the Social war in Italy, he renewed his aggressions, and in B.C. 89 was rapidly overrunning all Asia Minor. It was absolutely necessary to send an army against him.

**Sulla Consul against Mithridates, B.C. 88**  
**—Marius and Sulpicius.**—Accordingly Sulla was elected consul for the year B.C. 88, with orders first to march to Campania, where the Samnites held Nola and other towns, and, having completely stamped out the revolt, to sail with his army to Asia. Marius was furious at being again passed over. Party spirit just now ran high at Rome, the people at last having taken the side of the Italians against the Senate. Marius took advantage of this state of things and joined the Popular Party again. He was supported by Sulpicius Rufus, a tribune, who persuaded the people to pass a law in favour of the Italians, allowing them to be enrolled in all the tribes instead of only eight, thus giving them equal power with the Roman

citizens, and also another law taking the command of the war against Mithridates from the consul Sulla and giving it to Marius,) who was only a private citizen. The second law was a most unheard-of interference with the acknowledged right of the Senate to confer the different commands in war; and it is difficult to imagine how Sulpicius and Marius could have expected Sulla to obey it. If they did, they were quickly and unpleasantly undeceived.

**Sulla marches on Rome.**—Sulla was at this time with his army encamped before Nola. Two tribunes set out for Nola and brought him the orders of the people to hand over his command to his rival Marius. But Sulla did not hesitate a moment; he called together his soldiers and told them that he was not to lead them to Asia, for the people had given the command to Marius, and Marius would raise an army of other soldiers who would win all the glory and all the spoils of this new war. And the soldiers who, since Marius' reform of the army, were no longer citizens serving in the legions for a time, but professional soldiers whose only home was the camp, and who cared nothing for the Senate or the Comitia, but adored their victorious general, furious at the thought of being robbed of the rich spoils of Asia, tore the envoys of the people in pieces, and shouted to be led against Rome. This was what Sulla wanted. Then, for the first time, a Roman consul at the head of a Roman army marched against his own city. For the first time the sword of the legionary was unsheathed


in a civil dispute. The brawls and riots of the Forum had given place to the shock of battle. The civil war had begun.

**Flight of Marius.**—Marius and Sulpicius tried desperately to get together a force able to resist Sulla's legions. But after very little fighting he entered Rome, and the Senate was again triumphant. The laws of Sulpicius were repealed, for Sulla was master of the city, and the people dared not vote against him. Marius and Sulpicius and a few other leaders were proclaimed traitors, and a price was set on their heads. That was the only vengeance Sulla took. Sulpicius was caught and slain, and Sulla had his head hung up in the Forum. But Marius succeeded in escaping to the sea-coast; there he tried to find a ship, but in vain. After many adventures he reached Minturnæ, and wandered about in some marshes near the town. Suddenly some troopers of Sulla appeared, and the poor old man tried to hide by plunging up to his neck in the marsh. But he was discovered, and thrown into prison in Minturnæ. Then, in accordance with Sulla's proclamation, the magistrates sent a slave, a Cimbrian whom Marius himself had captured, to kill him, but when he entered the prison Marius glared at him, saying, "Man, darest thou kill Caius Marius?" and the slave fled terror-stricken and said to the magistrates, "I cannot do it". Then they repented, and put Marius on a ship and sent him out of the country. The unhappy exile came next to Sicily, then to Africa, every-



where driven away by the authorities. It is said that he landed at the ruins of Carthage : as usual a messenger came from the Roman governor ordering him to depart. But Marius replied : "Go, tell your master that you have seen Caius Marius sitting amid the ruins of Carthage".

At last he fell in with his son, and succeeded in joining the other exiles in the little island of Cercīna, near Carthage. There he awaited his time, and the seventh consulship, which he knew was to come.



## CHAPTER XXII.

### *SULLA—FIRST MITHRIDATIC AND FIRST CIVIL WAR.*

	B.C.
Sulla sails for Asia—Return of the Marians—	
Massacre at Rome, . . . . .	87
Capture of Athens—Battle of Chæronea—Death	
of Marius, . . . . .	86
Battle of Orchomenus, . . . . .	85
Mithridates makes peace, . . . . .	84
Sulla lands in Italy, . . . . .	83
Battles of Sacriportus and the Colline Gate, .	82
Dictatorship of Sulla—The Proscriptions, .	81
Death of Sulla, . . . . .	78

**Sulla tries to re-establish the Power of the Senate and departs for Asia.**—Sulla wished to leave the Senate secure against the Popular Party, when he and his legions had sailed for Asia. So he had several laws passed, (one of which was that no tribune might propose a law to the Comitia Tributa without the consent of the Senate) (see page 90). Then the elections for the consulship of the next year took place; and Sulla could not prevent a democrat named Cinna from being elected as one consul, though the other, Octavius, was an

aristocrat. This boded ill for the future. The Samnites, also, since the laws of Sulpicius, had made common cause with the Popular Party against the Senate, and had taken the field again, and Nola was still unconquered. But bad as things were in Italy, Sulla could not stay, for the news from Asia was worse. While the Romans were quarrelling as to who should command against him, Mithridates conquered the whole of Asia Minor. Greeks and Asiatics welcomed him as their deliverer from the Romans. Intoxicated by success, he issued a decree from Ephesus, that all Italians, men, women, and children, should be put to death. The decree was carried out, and no less than 80,000 were massacred. He then prepared to invade Greece. So Sulla was obliged to leave affairs at Rome to take their chance, and having made the consuls take an oath not to break the peace, he sailed from Brundisium at the head of six legions, about 30,000 men, early in the year B.C. 87.

**The Return of Marius, B.C. 87.**—Cinna was not troubled with scruples about his oath; he at once proposed a law recalling the exiles and re-enacting the law of Sulpicius. His colleague Octavius vehemently opposed it. As usual, there was fighting in the Forum. Thousands were slain and Cinna was driven from Rome. Thus at first the Senate seemed triumphant. But Cinna at once began to raise forces in Italy. The Samnites of course joined him; and even the Roman army besieging Nola was persuaded to desert to his standard. At the same time Marius

and the other exiles landed in Etruria, and with a force of freed slaves marched on Rome from the north. The Senate were now in terrible straits : from all sides rebel armies were closing round the city.

**Massacre at Rome.**—At last, after continual fighting under the walls of Rome, the Senate was obliged to surrender. Cinna, seated on his curule chair and surrounded by his lictors, received their envoys, and promised that he would be no party to bloodshed. Marius, clad in rags as an exile, stood by in sullen silence ; but when he entered the gates he ordered the massacre to begin. The consul Octavius was murdered and his head hung up in the Forum. Marius' old colleague, Catulus, in spite of the entreaties of his friends, was compelled to commit suicide. For five days the bloody work went on. Bands of ruffians roamed about the streets slaughtering whom they would, till at last Cinna allowed his officer Sertorius to cut them to pieces. Many nobles, including Sulla's wife and children, fled to Greece ; his house and property were confiscated.

**Seventh Consulship and Death of Marius, B.C. 86.**—Then Cinna and Marius named themselves consuls without election for the year 86 B.C. Thus Marius' dream about his seventh consulship came true ; but he only lived to enjoy it sixteen days. In the beginning of the year he was seized with fever brought on by excitement and dissipation ; in his delirium he thought he was fighting Sulla in Asia. After seven days' illness he died at the age of seventy-

one. Such was the sad end of the man who saved Rome from the Cimbri and Teutones. Cinna chose Valerius Flaccus to the vacant consulship, and despatched him with an army to the East. His orders were to reduce Sulla to submission, and then to conquer Mithridates.

**Sulla in Greece—Siege of Athens—Battles of Chæronea, B.C. 86, and Orchomenus, B.C. 85.**—When Sulla landed in Greece, he found the whole country already in the hands of Mithridates' general, an able Greek named Archelāus. Mithridates himself was collecting a huge host to send to his assistance. Soon came news of the return of the Marians to Rome, and Sulla knew that he had no help to expect from home ; but, aided by some of the Greek states, he obtained provisions for his army. After besieging and taking Athens, he utterly defeated two huge Asiatic hosts in two successive battles, at Chæronēa (B.C. 86), and Orchomēnus (B.C. 85), both towns in Boeotia. In the second battle the legions began to give way before the overwhelming numbers of the foe. But Sulla leapt from his horse and seized a standard, and rushed towards the enemy, saying, "Tell your friends at home that you deserted your general at Orchomenus". Then the Romans rallied, and the victory was won.

**Flaccus, the Marian Consul, murdered by his Soldiers.**—Meanwhile the consul Flaccus had crossed over to Greece with two legions ; he at once sent a detachment southwards ordering Sulla in the

name of the Senate to surrender his command ; but the only result was that the detachment deserted to the side of the victorious general. Then Flaccus in despair determined to attack Mithridates in his own dominions in Asia ; but he hardly reached the other side of the Bosphorus when his second in command, Fimbria, stirred up a mutiny among the soldiers. Flaccus was killed, and Fimbria took the command.

**Mithridates makes Peace, B.C. 84—Sulla returns to Italy, B.C. 83.**—Sulla now began to march northwards to carry the war into Asia, but Mithridates was appalled by the loss of his two armies in Greece. He was being attacked with some success by Fimbria near the Hellespont, and the Asiatics, disgusted by his cruelties, were turning against him. So in despair he ordered his general Archelaus to treat for peace. The negotiations took some time, and Sulla continued his march to the Hellespont.

On reaching Asia he had an interview with Mithridates himself, and peace was at last made, B.C. 84. Mithridates agreed to surrender all his conquests and all his ships and pay 2000 talents.

Then Sulla turned upon Fimbria. His soldiers deserted in crowds ; and he himself, after an attempt to have Sulla murdered, put an end to his own life.

Thus by his wonderful skill and good fortune Sulla emerged triumphantly from his difficulties. After concluding peace he had sent a friendly message to the Senate, but Cinna and the popular leaders had refused to make any terms. So after spending a year

in settling the affairs of Asia Minor, rewarding those states that had remained faithful, and punishing the perpetrators of the cruel massacre, he started back to Italy, and landed at Brundisium in the spring of B.C. 83, at the head of five legions, accustomed to victory and enthusiastically devoted to their general.

**The Civil War—Advance of Sulla.**—At Rome all was excitement and alarm. The Popular Party knew what they had to expect if Sulla came back victorious. In the year B.C. 84, when Sulla's proposals were rejected, Cinna tried to collect an army to attack him in Greece, but his soldiers mutinied and he was murdered. The preparations were continued by the other consul, Carbo, who prevented all the attempts of the Senate to make peace.

When Sulla landed the weakness of the Popular Party was soon shown. Desertions began at once. The son of Pompeius Strabo, a young man only twenty-three years old, joined him with three legions which he had himself raised. Sulla issued a proclamation granting the Italians all their demands, and so was able to march unopposed to Campania. There he defeated one of the consuls of the year. The other consul tried to negotiate, but his men deserted to Sulla, and he and his officers were made prisoners. Sulla then retired into winter quarters in Campania.

**Defeats of the Marians, B.C. 82.**—During the winter Carbo with desperate energy collected forces for the coming campaign. He did not even scruple to rifle the treasures of the temples to get money.

In the elections he succeeded in obtaining the consulship, with the son of Marius as his colleague.

When the fighting began Carbo marched north against Pompeius, while young Marius opposed Sulla, who was advancing into Latium from Campania. At Sacriportus near Præneste the armies met: Marius was totally routed and fled into Præneste. Leaving a force to blockade him there, Sulla hurried on to Rome. The democrats fled in consternation, but before they left they took a cowardly vengeance by murdering several of the leading senators. Having made himself master of Rome, Sulla advanced against Carbo. Surrounded by more than one hostile army, Carbo fought desperately, and sometimes with success, but the tide gradually turned against him. At last in despair he fled to Africa. His army was soon after cut to pieces by Pompeius.

**Defeat of the Samnites at Colline Gate.**—But the war was not yet over. The Samnites determined to make one more effort to save their friends the Marians; and so the social war, which had ceased since Sulla's departure for Asia, began again. An army of 70,000 marched to relieve Præneste. Finding the way barred by Sulla, they made a sudden and unexpected dash on Rome, like Hannibal during the siege of Capua; but Rome was not so well fortified as in those days. Sulla followed hard after, and at noon came up with them encamped before the Colline Gate of Rome. Wearied as his men were, he gave the order for immediate attack—he dared



not wait. The Samnites fought with the courage of despair, and, when night came, Sulla found himself repulsed: news of his defeat actually reached Præneste. But hearing that his right wing had been victorious he renewed the conflict, and by the morning the Samnite army was destroyed, except 8000 who were made prisoners on condition of their lives being spared. Triumphant at last over all his enemies, Sulla entered the city and called together the Senate. While he was addressing them shrieks were heard from the Campus Martius. Sulla told the senators not to be alarmed, it was only a few rebels who were being punished. The rebels were the Samnite prisoners, whom he had ordered to be butchered in cold blood.

**End of the Civil War.**—Præneste soon surrendered. Young Marius committed suicide, and all the male population was butchered. A few other places in Italy which still held out were reduced one by one and treated with like severity.

In several of the provinces the Marian leaders still resisted, notably in Spain, Sicily, and Africa. But they were crushed during the next year.

Pompeius was Sulla's general in Sicily. While he was there Carbo, the late consul, was captured and brought before him. Pompeius at once had him executed. Having conquered Sicily, he crossed to Africa, and speedily conquered the Marians there. He then demanded a triumph. This Sulla refused, as he was still a simple knight and had never held any

office. But his soldiers became so mutinous at the refusal that Sulla was obliged to yield, and saluted the young conqueror with the title of Great; he was called Pompeius Magnus.

### Dictatorship of Sulla—The Proscriptions.

—Sulla caused himself to be named Dictator at Rome, not for six months, which was the legal time, but for as long as he chose. This gave him absolute power. He then issued a proclamation that everyone who had been in arms at the end of the civil war was an enemy to the state, and might be killed and his property forfeited. So the bloody work began; bands of soldiers roamed about the country carrying out the decree. No one's life seemed safe: so great was the alarm and uncertainty that one day Sulla was asked in the Senate to publish the names of the guilty. Sulla said he would post up a list. The first day a list of 80 names was posted, then a list of 200, and so on, for he said that he could not remember all the names at once. The Latin for a list is *proscriptio*, so these and similar massacres were called proscriptions.

From December, 82 B.C., to June, 81 B.C., the proscriptions went on, and nearly 5000 citizens are said to have perished. Sulla showed the utmost carelessness about the crimes of his followers, many of whom enriched themselves enormously by means of the proscriptions and many innocent people perished.

In the ranks of the Popular Party was a nephew of Marius, eighteen years of age, who had married

Cinna's daughter. Sulla ordered him to divorce his wife, but he sturdily refused. He would have been proscribed but for the entreaties of many friends, for his family was one of the greatest in Rome. Sulla spared him, saying at the same time, "In that boy there is more than one Marius". That boy's name was Caius Julius Cæsar.

**End of the Social War.**—The end of the Civil War was also the end of the Social War. The Italians retained the citizenship as Sulla had promised, that is, those who survived the war and the proscriptions; but the Samnites were utterly destroyed and their country laid desolate, and many towns were punished by the loss of territory, in which Sulla settled his victorious soldiers, said to have numbered 120,000. Thus the Italians obtained their object, but as separate peoples they disappeared. Instead of their joining Rome, Rome spread all over Italy; and henceforward it was the capital of Italy, as London is of England.

**The Reforms of Sulla.**—Sulla now set himself to put the government into order again. First of all, to make the Senate strong enough to keep the reins of power without any interference from tribunes or Assembly, he enacted his former laws that no measure could be proposed to the people without the consent of the Senate; and in various ways he greatly lessened the power of the tribunes. Secondly, since the administration, which was made for Rome when it was a small state, was unsuitable, now that she was head of a large

empire and capital of Italy; Sulla made some changes here also. The consuls were not to be generals, but to stay in Italy and govern with the help of the prætors (see page 70), whom he increased in number. After their year of office the consuls and prætors were to govern the provinces and command the armies as pro-consuls and pro-prætors. The Senate was to arrange which provinces they should govern; and it was treason for any governor to quit his province without leave or disobey the Senate. By this means he hoped that the Senate would be able to rule peacefully in Italy without being threatened again in future by the legions of a victorious general like himself. Finally, he re-arranged the administration of justice and made courts of law for trying criminal cases; and the judges were to be senators as before the days of Caius Gracchus. But at the same time he promoted many of the equites to fill the numerous vacancies in the Senate caused by the civil war; and so the rivalry between the two orders started by Caius Gracchus came to an end.

**Abdication of Sulla—His Death, B.C. 78.**—Having finished all his reforms, and as he hoped restored the power of the Senate, in the year 79 B.C., Sulla resigned his dictatorship. He made a speech to the people, in which he asked whether anyone had any complaints against him. No one of course dared to say anything. Sulla then dismissed his lictors and walked away a private citizen. He settled at his country house near Cumæ in Campania, where he

spent the rest of his life in writing his memoirs, which unfortunately have not come down to us. His dissipated mode of life hastened his end. He was seized with a loathsome disease, and died of a broken blood-vessel the next year, B.C. 78, at the age of 60. Such was the end of this extraordinary man. He well deserved the title of Felix which he took ; for he died in the height of his glory, having overcome all his enemies. Bad and depraved as he was, he was certainly the ablest of all the Romans before Julius Cæsar. He was given a funeral such as had never before been seen at Rome. His body was burnt on the Campus Martius, the burial-place of the kings of Rome, and the Roman matrons mourned for him for a whole year.



COIN OF CORNELIUS SULLA FELIX,

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### *POMPEIUS AND THE MISGOVERNMENT OF THE SENATE.*

	B. C.
Rising of Sertorius in Spain, . . . . .	80
Rebellion of Lepidus, . . . . .	77
Pompeius goes to Spain, . . . . .	76
Beginning of Second Mithridatic War, . . . . .	74
Unsuccessful Expedition against the Pirates, . . . . .	74
Lucullus defeats Mithridates at Cyzicus, . . . . .	73
Insurrection of Spartacus—Four Wars at once . . . . .	73
Murder of Sertorius, . . . . .	72
Victory of Lucullus at Cabira, . . . . .	72
Defeat and death of Spartacus, . . . . .	71
Pompeius and Crassus repeal Sulla's laws . . . . .	70
Victory of Lucullus at Tigranocerta, . . . . .	69
Retreat of Lucullus—Mithridates reconquers Pontus, . . . . .	67
Gabinian Law—Pompeius crushes the Pirates, . . . . .	67
Manilian Law—Pompeius conquers Mithridates, . . . . .	66
Death of Mithridates, . . . . .	63

**The Senate after Sulla's Death—Four wars at once.**—If Sulla had lived longer, he might perhaps, by the support of his great name, have restored the Senate to its former power, and established a firm government. But with

his death all hope vanished. The troubles began again the very next year by the revolt of Lepidus, one of the consuls, who, though one of his followers, demanded the repeal of his laws. He, however, was easily defeated by Pompeius, who seemed to be stepping into Sulla's place as protector of the Senate. Soon afterwards the Senate found itself engaged in four wars at once. These were against (1) Sertorius, a Marian (see p. 217) in Spain; (2) Spartacus, an escaped gladiator in Italy; (3) the pirates of the Mediterranean; and (4) Sulla's old enemy, Mithridates, king of Pontus.

Not a single one of these wars was promptly and successfully dealt with. Thus, attacked by foreign foes, unable to prevent rebellion in the provinces, or to keep the fields of Italy from devastation, or the merchant-ships from capture, the Senate deservedly fell into contempt. Never was an empire worse governed than by the restored Senate for eight years after Sulla's death. Men soon began to see that the only way to save the State was to put the supreme power into the hands of some man of ability whom they could trust. The days of the Republic were numbered, and the way was being prepared for the Empire.

**Sertorius rebels in Spain, B.C. 80.**—Sertorius, one of the most moderate of the Marians who had escaped the proscriptions, was invited to Spain, B.C. 80, by the native tribe Lusitani. A most able soldier and statesman, of noble character and winning man-

ners, he gained the enthusiastic loyalty of the Spaniards, and, by repeated victories over the generals sent against him, gradually extended his authority over almost the whole of Spain. So formidable did he become that, after the defeat of Lepidus, the Senate determined to have recourse again to Pompeius, and sent him to Spain as proconsul, B.C. 76, although he had as yet held no office. This was a violation of the laws of Sulla. Pompeius was not particularly successful at first, and even suffered a defeat; but the Spaniards, as Viriathus had found (see p. 172), were difficult even for a man like Sertorius to keep together during a prolonged struggle. Slowly, but steadily, the Romans advanced, and by the end of the year 75 B.C. Sertorius had been driven back into Lusitania; but here, by skilful guerilla warfare, he successfully kept Pompeius at bay.

**The Insurrection of the Gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73.**—You have been told about the gladiatorial shows in which wretched men, mostly barbarian prisoners, were made to fight and kill each other for the amusement of their conquerors. The gladiators were kept in schools or training places (called *ludi*), where they were taught to fight as skilfully as possible. In one of these *ludi* at Capua there was a Thracian gladiator named Spartacus, who, hating the horrible life to which he was doomed, persuaded his comrades to break loose. Seventy followed his lead. Spartacus took up a position in the crater of Mount Vesuvius, at that time thought to be an extinct



volcano. Here he was joined by a number of runaway slaves and brigands.

A force of 3000 men was sent to suppress the rising ; but Spartacus by a sudden attack put them to flight and captured their arms, of which he was in the greatest need. The fame of this victory soon swelled Spartacus' followers to tens of thousands. A large army sent against him under a prætor was defeated ; and next year (B.C. 72) the two consuls shared the same fate ; and Spartacus, treating the Romans as they had treated him, forced his prisoners to fight together as gladiators for the entertainment of his victorious soldiery. All Italy was now exposed to plunder and devastation, such as she had not suffered since the days of Hannibal. Had Spartacus' force been a regular disciplined army instead of a horde of barbarians bent on plunder, rapine, and revenge, Rome itself could hardly have been saved.

**The Pirates of the Mediterranean.**—For many years the Mediterranean had been infested with bands of these pests. Their home was in the mountain fastnesses of Illyria and Cilicia, whence they issued in their light vessels and preyed upon the trading ships which crowded the neighbouring seas. Julius Cæsar himself when on a journey to the East fell into the hands of one of these bands. Expecting a ransom, they treated him well ; and by his agreeable manners he made himself a most amusing guest. His most appreciated joke was that as soon as he was free he would return and extirpate them. The

ransom came, and the pirates bade farewell to their noble guest. Cæsar at once collected some ships and carried out his promise by destroying the band.

During the civil wars their power had grown enormously. Altogether the different bands are said to have possessed over a thousand vessels. Not content with stopping defenceless merchantmen in their own waters, they began to venture into the western part of the Mediterranean, and actually attacked the coast of Italy itself. They are said to have on one occasion carried off a Roman prætor. They attacked Ostia, the port of Rome, and destroyed a fleet there, and even plundered travellers on the Appian road. From time to time the Senate made efforts to put a stop to this disgraceful state of things; but hitherto they had met with nothing but failure. The last attempt had been in B.C. 74, and proved a greater failure than ever.

**Beginning of the Second Mithridatic War, B.C. 74.**—In the year B.C. 75 the King of Bithynia died, and left his dominions as a legacy to Rome. Mithridates, taking advantage of the difficulties of the Senate, already struggling with Sertorius and the pirates, at once invaded Bithynia on behalf of a supposed son of the late king. At first he was most successful; he advanced unopposed right up to the Hellespont, where he defeated the Roman admiral, Cotta, and besieged the town of Cyzicus by land and sea, B.C. 74.

**Lucullus defeats Mithridates, B.C. 73.**—But the Roman general in Asia, Lucullus, an able soldier

but haughty noble, came to the rescue of Cyzicus ; Mithridates, besieged in his turn for a whole winter, was glad to be able to escape to Pontus with the remnant of his army, and all his years of preparation were utterly thrown away (B.C. 73). Lucullus followed him into Pontus, and next year (B.C. 72) defeated him at Cabīra. Mithridates fled for safety into Armenia, to his son-in-law, Tigrānes ; there Lucullus left him to his own devices and devoted the next two years to reducing the towns of Pontus and arranging the government of Asia Minor. In this task he offended the equites at Rome, because he prevented them from enriching themselves by unfairly collecting the taxes of the Province of Asia (see page 183). How the equites revenged themselves you will soon hear.

**Lucullus conquers Tigranes at Tigranocerta, B.C. 69.**—In B.C. 69 the war began again. Tigrānes having refused to surrender Mithridates, Lucullus invaded Armenia, but his forces were very weak. Owing to the garrisons which he had to leave in Pontus and the long line of communications which he had to guard, he reached Tigranocerta, the capital of Tigranes, with only 15,000 men. "They are too few for an army, too many for an embassy," exclaimed Tigranes, who commanded 150,000 infantry and 50,000 mailed cavalry, and he ordered Lucullus' head to be brought to him. But the numbers of the Asiatics were only a source of confusion, and could not prevail against Roman discipline. Tigranes'

unwieldy host was routed ; Tigranocerta, with the king's treasury, taken. The Romans are said to have lost only five men.

**Ill-success of Lucullus, B.C. 68-66.**—Tigranes did not give in after this defeat, but, by the advice of Mithridates, retired further into the mountainous country of Armenia, and there set about training another army. So next year (B.C. 68) Lucullus started from Tigranocerta to cross the mountains and attack Artaxāta, the old capital of Armenia ; but the difficulties of this march, into a rugged and unknown country, were tremendous ; the legionaries, with whom Lucullus had always been unpopular, at last broke into open mutiny, headed by the afterwards notorious P. Clodius, and Lucullus found that there was nothing for it but to retrace his steps. But meanwhile Mithridates, taking advantage of Lucullus' distant expedition into Armenia, had again invaded Pontus and defeated the Roman troops left there. And when in the following spring (B.C. 67) Lucullus himself arrived in Pontus, he still could do nothing owing to the mutinous spirit of his troops. A fresh mortification was in store for him. He had always been hated by the Popular Party for his haughtiness, and we learnt lately how, by his strict justice, he had offended the equites. These enemies, taking advantage of his failure in Armenia, had a new general named Glabrio sent out to take his place. Glabrio could do nothing. Mithridates won back Pontus, and all the brilliant exploits of Lucullus were undone.

**End of the Wars against Sertorius and Spartacus. Murder of Sertorius, B.C. 72.—**For three years Sertorius had been holding Pompeius at bay in Lusitania. How much longer he could have held out we cannot say; but luck, as usual, favoured Pompeius. Jealousy and disunion broke out in Sertorius' camp; his second in command, a Roman named Perpenna, formed a plot against him, and he was assassinated at a banquet (B.C. 72). It was a foolish as well as a wicked act, for the death of Sertorius destroyed all hope of resistance. Perpenna was soon defeated and captured by Pompeius. He tried to save his life by surrendering papers containing all the secrets of Sertorius. But Pompeius refused to read them, and ordered his instant execution. There was no more resistance. Pompeius quickly re-established the government of Spain, and then hurried back to Italy to take part in the war against Spartacus.

**Defeat and Death of Spartacus, B.C. 71.—**But he found that war practically over. After the defeat of the consuls by Spartacus (B.C. 72), the command had been given to a rich noble named Crassus. He was a follower of Sulla, his father having been murdered by Marius. He had gained great wealth in the proscriptions. Wealth was his great object, but he was not devoid of ability as a general, having commanded Sulla's victorious wing at the Colline Gate. Crassus defeated Spartacus and tried to shut him up

in Bruttium, the toe of Italy, by building a wall across the narrowest part. Spartacus, however, managed to cut his way out, and was again at large, roaming through Italy. But, as with Sertorius in Spain, disunion began to show itself; his army broke up into two divisions. Crassus routed one and then fell upon Spartacus himself. The old gladiator, now fairly at bay, fought like a lion till he fell, covered with wounds. His followers were dispersed; but one body retreating northwards fell in with Pompeius' army returning from Spain, and was cut to pieces. So Pompeius wrote to the Senate, "Crassus has defeated the enemy; I have plucked up the war by the roots". Thus Rome was saved from its most formidable dangers, and could breathe again freely. But no credit was given to the Senate. The hero of the day was Pompeius, and after him Crassus.

**Consulship of Pompeius and Crassus, They abolish the Laws of Sulla, B.C. 70.**—Pompeius wished for the honour of a triumph, but the Senate opposed it, because he had not been a consul. But the army and people, whose favourite he was, owing to the brilliancy of his successes, wished him to have it. So Pompeius determined to desert the Senate, on whose side he had hitherto been, and join the Popular Party, whose object now was to abolish the laws of Sulla, which took away the power of the People. Crassus, who owing to his wealth was supported by the equites, also joined him

jealous of him though he was. They remained outside Rome without disbanding their armies, and the Senate, being powerless against them, was obliged to submit to its own generals, the very thing which Sulla had tried to prevent. Pompeius obtained his coveted triumph (his second illegal one); and he and Crassus were elected consuls for the next year (B.C. 70).

**His Election.**—This was another illegal act on the part of Pompeius, for he was under the proper age, and, though often in the command of armies, had never held any of the inferior offices which it was necessary to hold before a man could be elected consul. When consuls, Pompeius and Crassus repealed Sulla's laws against the people and tribunes, and gave them back their power. They were supported in these measures by Julius Cæsar, who had returned to Rome, and was beginning his political career as one of the Popular Party. Thus Sulla's great work was undone by his own follower. The old struggle between the Senate and the people began again, and would not be ended till some man arose strong enough to seize the reins of government. Pompeius might at this time have been the man; but though fond of popularity, he did not know how to use it properly. When his consulship was over he retired into private life, and rested on his laurels for two years, till events called him out again. These events were connected with the remaining two of the four wars—those against the pirates and Mithridates.

**End of the Wars against the Pirates and Mithridates.—The Gabinian Law.—Pompeius destroys the Pirates, B.C. 67.**—The disgust of the people at the failures of the Senate, especially in the last expedition against the pirates, was so great that after a time they began to turn again to their natural saviour, the ever victorious Pompeius. This seemed an excellent opportunity for the Popular Party to strike a fresh blow against the Senate. So Gabinus, a tribune, proposed a law that, to clear the seas of the pirates, a single general (whom it was perfectly well known was to be Pompeius) should be given supreme command of all the coasts of the Mediterranean for 50 miles inland with all the forces, naval and military, for three years.

This was a most unheard-of proposal, for it put the whole Roman empire at the mercy of one man. It was also contrary to the usual Roman practice by which, as has been mentioned already, the Senate, not the people, appointed generals to commands. So the Senate resisted desperately; the meeting of the Assembly to vote on the law was very stormy; one of the tribunes, a supporter of the Senate, tried to interpose his veto; but, owing to the furious opposition excited, he withdrew it. Cæsar and Crassus supported the law; the great orator Cicero spoke enthusiastically for it. And it was carried.

Pompeius took the work in hand; and most skilfully did he employ the vast forces placed under his command. Starting from the Straits of Gibraltar, he



searched every nook of the Mediterranean, and swept all the pirates eastwards ; then he crushed them in a great battle off the coast of Cilicia, and piracy was a thing of the past. The whole was done in a few months.

**The Manilian Law, B.C. 66.**—The overwhelming success of Pompeius against the pirates and the retreat of Lucullus from Pontus happened about the same time ; and so, though Lucullus if he had been given a sufficiently large army could easily have conquered Mithridates, men's minds again turned to Pompeius. Another tribune, called Manilius, brought in a law exactly like the Gabinian, putting the East, with all the forces there, under Pompeius' command, that he might end the Mithridatic war. This law, called the Manilian, was easily carried. Pompeius was in Cilicia when the news of his new appointment reached him. He at once marched north with an army of 50,000 men. On his way he met Lucullus, who reproached him for snatching the laurels from the real victor, as he had done in the war against Spartacus. Lucullus returned to Rome. He obtained the triumph which he deserved so well, but not till after three years. Utterly disgusted by his unfair treatment, he retired into private life, and sought to console himself by enjoying the vast wealth which he had acquired.

**Final Overthrow of Mithridates, B.C. 66—His Death.**—The task which Pompeius now had to perform was by his usual luck made easy for him,

owing to a quarrel which broke out between Mithridates and Tigranes; so he had only Mithridates to deal with. The king, whose forces were inferior in number to the Romans, adopted the plan which he had recommended to Tigranes against Lucullus. He retired into the mountains of Pontus, where he led the Romans many weary marches. But in vain; for at last Pompeius skilfully managed to surround his camp. Suddenly in the middle of the night the Asiatics found themselves assailed on all sides. Everywhere the terrible war-cry of the legions was heard. The camp was stormed and the defenders cut to pieces. Mithridates, with a few attendants, rode from the scene of slaughter. He at first thought of taking refuge with Tigranes, in spite of their quarrel; but hearing that his son-in-law had set a price on his head, he fled to the Crimea. There he lived a few years more, plotting schemes of vengeance against his relentless foes. But dissensions broke out in his own family. His favourite son Pharnāces rebelled and conquered him; and Mithridates, to escape worse death, committed suicide in the sixty-sixth year of his age (B.C. 63). Pompeius ordered him a royal funeral.


**Pompeius settles the Government of the East.**—Tigranes submitted immediately after the defeat of Mithridates. He was obliged to pay a large sum of money and surrender some of his dominions, but was left on his throne, and remained ever afterwards a loyal ally of Rome.

Pompeius now set about the work of organisation.

He arranged the government of Pontus, making it into a Roman province. He then marched south into Syria, at this time ruled by a feeble descendant of Antiochus the Great (see page 152). This country, with Judæa attached, he also made into a province.

**The Position of Pompeius.** — Pompeius had now completed the work for which his great powers had been given him; and he had completed it most successfully, showing what a Roman commander could do with a large force at his disposal and unfettered by political factions at home. He had cleared the sea of the pirates; he had crushed Mithridates, and organised all Asia as far east as the Euphrates firmly under Roman rule. He is said to have founded nearly forty cities, and brought the sum of £2,000,000 into the Roman treasury, after distributing over £3,000,000 among his soldiers. He was now (B.C. 63) about to return to Rome.

The four wars which had proved too difficult for the Senate were over. Three of them Pompeius had himself concluded, and he had had a hand in concluding the fourth. He had restored peace to the Empire, and seemed the one man destined to rule it. But during his long absence in the East other men had come to the front at Rome, and events had happened which upset all his calculations.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

### *CATILINARIAN CONSPIRACY—FIRST TRIUMVIRATE.*

	B. C.
Conspiracy of Catilina frustrated by Cicero, . . .	63
Defeat and Death of Catilina—Julius Cæsar Prætor, . . . . .	62
Return of Pompeius to Italy—Julius Cæsar Governor of Spain, . . . . .	61
✓ Alliance of Pompeius, Cæsar and Crassus (First Triumvirate), . . . . .	60
Consulship of Cæsar and Bibulus, . . . . .	59
Banishment of Cicero, . . . . .	58

**The Leading Men at Rome—Cato.**—While Pompeius was engaged in his career of conquest in the East, the Senate was with difficulty holding its own at Rome. The leading man on the side of the Senate was M. Porcius Cato, the great grandson of the famous old censor, Cato, the great enemy of Carthage (see page 180). Cato was a man of the strictest virtue, both in public and private life. He worshipped the memory of his great ancestor and, like him, sought to present an example of the old Roman simplicity and sternness in the midst of a luxurious and profligate age. He sighed for the good old days when the Senate really ruled the State, for he was too

narrow-minded to see how changed both Rome and the Senate were; and so, throughout his life, he fought to the last for the degenerate Senate of his day with an obstinate courage worthy of a better cause. As a Roman poet sang, "The gods fought for the victors, Cato for the vanquished".

**Crassus and Cæsar.**—On the other side were Crassus, with all the power his vast riches gave him, whose idea of wealth was that "no one could call himself a rich man unless he could keep an army," and Cæsar, already rising rapidly into public notice. Cæsar, now rather more than thirty years of age, was distinguished even among the frivolous young nobles of the day by his extravagance and love of pleasure; but his extravagance was deliberately intended to win popularity, and with all his apparent pursuit of pleasure he cherished a firm resolve to end the misgovernment of the Senate, and to raise himself to power as head of the Popular Party. In B.C. 65 he was ædile, and showed what his purpose was by restoring, to the great delight of the people, with greater splendour than ever, the statues of his uncle Marius which Sulla had thrown down: he won a still firmer place in their affections by the unprecedented magnificence of the games which it was his duty to provide, in which, aided by the wealth of Crassus, he exhibited gladiators armed with silver and wild beasts in silver cages.

**Cicero.**—Very different from Cæsar was the great orator M. Tullius Cicero, six years his senior in age.

Cicero was not a noble, but belonged to the order of the equites, being the son of a wealthy citizen of Arpinum, in Latium, the birthplace of Marius. He was of blameless life, a man of peace rather than of war, and had forced his way up by his wonderful eloquence. He was a moderate man, and had not yet quite made up his mind which side he was going to take. His greatest achievement had been his successful prosecution of the infamous proprætor Verres, for misgovernment in Sicily (B.C. 70); and as Verres had been an adherent of Sulla, this action won him the good-will of the people. In B.C. 66 he held the office of prætor.

**Catilina.**—Besides the party of Crassus and Cæsar, there was another small but desperate faction, who desired more violent methods against the Senate's government, and aimed at nothing less than revolution. This faction was under the leadership of L. Sergius Catilina, originally a follower of Sulla. He was a man of great bravery and strength, but of an utterly abandoned character, if we are to believe a tithe of the stories told against him by Roman historians. Disappointed in an attempt to be elected consul, he rallied round himself all the desperate characters in Rome—men who had nothing to lose and everything to gain by revolution—ruined and profligate young nobles, and old soldiers of Sulla, who had run through their fortunes, or failed as farmers, and thirsted for more proscriptions. Catilina's object was to overthrow the hated and despised Senate by a rising and massacre in

Rome, and under pretence of establishing a democracy to make himself master of the State like Sulla had been. The Senate were aware of the plot ; but, for fear of the people, they dared not do anything. It is said that even Crassus and Cæsar were privy to it, but this is probably false ; though, like Catilina, they aimed at the overthrow of the Senate.

**Cicero Consul, B.C. 63.**—At last the crisis came. At the end of B.C. 64 Catilina again stood for the consulship, together with C. Antonius, one of his adherents. The Senate were in great straits. They could not put forward a noble, for they were afraid that the people, in that case, would prefer Catilina ; so they asked Cicero to be a candidate, who would be acceptable to the people, and would be supported by all respectable men. The plan was successful ; Cicero and Antonius were elected. Antonius, though a follower of Catilina, was a weak man, and Cicero won him over to his side by promising that, when their consulship was over, and they had to decide to which provinces they would go as governors, he would give him the one which he wanted, instead of casting lots according to the usual practice.

**He fights the Conspiracy.**—Then Cicero set himself to fight the conspiracy tooth and nail. He succeeded in getting regular information as to what was going on ; but, during the greater part of the year, Catilina remained quiet ; the time was not yet ripe for action. When the time for the next consular elections came in the autumn of B.C. 63, Catilina again

stood as a candidate. Cicero, as consul, presided, and Catilina's plan was to have him murdered, and, in the confusion, get himself elected ; but Cicero, by means of his private information, was fully prepared. He went to the Comitia, armed with a coat of mail, and surrounded by a bodyguard of nobles ; and when he displayed the coat of mail to the people, they rallied round him, and Catilina was again rejected.

Catilina now determined to act at once: he arranged that there should be a rebellion in Etruria, where many of Sulla's veterans were collected, and an outbreak in Rome, in which the city was to be fired, and the consuls murdered. But the consuls were ordered by the Senate to take measures for the protection of the State. Cicero put the city into a state of defence ; and made a great speech in the Senate, denouncing Catilina to his face. He attempted to reply, but no one would sit near him or listen, whereupon he rushed out, and hurried to join his forces in Etruria, leaving two conspirators—Lentulus and Cethægus—both nobles, and the former, an ex-consul, to carry out the rising at Rome, as soon as he should appear before the walls. The Senate proclaimed him a public enemy, and C. Antonius was despatched against him.

**Cicero crushes the Conspiracy at Rome.**—Cicero remained to fight the conspiracy at Rome. In spite of his informers he had no legal proof of the guilt of the conspirators, until through some Gaulish ambassadors, who happened to be at Rome and were



tampered with by them, he obtained some of their actual letters. At once he determined to act. Lentulus and Cethegus were arrested. A debate was held in the Senate as to their fate. Cæsar was in favour of imprisonment for life, but Cato spoke for death, which the Senate voted. To prevent rescue, the very same night Cicero had them taken to the prison Tullianum and strangled, without any appeal to the people, to which, as Roman citizens, they were entitled (see page 15). When all was over, Cicero came out and announced the result to the people in the Forum with the word *Vixerunt*, "they have lived". The news was received with shouts of joy, and he was escorted home triumphantly with torches.

**Defeat and Death of Catilina, B.C. 62.**—The news of the execution fell as a thunderbolt in Catilina's camp in Etruria. Many of his levies deserted him. He tried to retreat into Gaul, but found the road barred. Then he turned to bay at Pistoria. C. Antonius, unwilling to fight against his old confederate, pretended to be ill, and left the command to his second in command Petreius. Catilina drew up his small force with skill and fought with the courage of despair; but he was killed and his army destroyed.

**Prætorship of Cæsar—He attacks Cicero.**—The only result of the conspiracy was to discredit the Popular Party and strengthen the cause of the Senate for a time by bringing the moderate men, headed by Cicero, on to its side. Cicero had shown the greatest

skill and coolness in suppressing the conspiracy ; but he had made one mistake—the execution of Lentulus and Cethegus without a trial. Cæsar was now prætor, but could do little against the power of the Senate ; so, eager to do something to recover his lost ground, he at once seized on this point, and began to attack Cicero.

In this he was aided by a (tribune, (Metellus Nepos, an adherent of Pompeius.) On the last day of his consulship Cicero tried to make his speech in the Forum about his exploit, but Metellus stopped him by his veto. All Cicero could do was to swear an oath, “I alone have saved the state,” and Cato saluted him “Father of his country,” amid loud shouts of assent from the assembled multitude. After vainly struggling against the Senate during his year of office, Cæsar went as governor to Further Spain, Crassus having helped him to pay some of his debts, said to have amounted at this time to £2,000,000.

**Return of Pompeius, B.C. 61.**—In the spring of B.C. 61, about the time that Cæsar started for Spain, Pompeius at last returned from the East. Instead of coming, as was feared, at the head of his victorious legions like Sulla, he disbanded his army, trusting that the glory of his achievements would enable him to carry all before him. But he was sadly mistaken. The Senate still regarded him as an enemy, and now felt strong enough to defy him ; Crassus, his old ally, was jealous ; Lucullus, whom he superseded in the Mithri-

datio war, was thirsting for revenge; and the people, to whom he owed his command in the East, had a new favourite, Julius Cæsar. So he found himself thwarted at every turn. He wanted three things: first, a triumph; secondly, that his arrangements in the East should be ratified; and thirdly, that lands should be given to his soldiers. The triumph he at last obtained after nine months' mortifying struggles; but the ratification of his acts in the East and the giving of lands to his veterans were so fiercely opposed by Lucullus in the Senate, that for the present he failed to obtain them.

**Alliance of Cæsar, Pompeius, and Crassus**  
—The "First Triumvirate," B.C. 60.—In the autumn of the next year Cæsar returned from Spain, where he had successfully fought against some native tribes and wrung enough money out of them to repay Crassus his loan. Finding Pompeius in difficulties, he struck a secret bargain with him, that he would help Pompeius to obtain his objects if Pompeius would help him in his struggle against the Senate. Pompeius, considering, doubtless, that Cæsar would be a convenient tool that might be thrown away when done with, consented. Then Cæsar reconciled Crassus with him, and the three made an alliance, engaging to use their influence to support one another's designs in opposition to the Senate. This secret alliance is often, but incorrectly, called the First Triumvirate, the reason for which name will be given later. It was further cemented the next year by the marriage

of Cæsar's beautiful daughter Julia to Pompeius. In spite of more than twenty years' difference in their ages, and the fact that politics, not affection, was its cause, the marriage was an exceedingly happy one.

**First Consulship of Cæsar, B.C. 59.**—The first result of the alliance was that, in spite of all the efforts of Cato and the senatorial party, Cæsar was elected consul for the year 59 B.C. His colleague was M. Bibulus, a narrow-minded but determined aristocrat, son-in-law of Cato; he had been his colleague also as ædile and as prætor. Then the struggle began. Cæsar introduced into the Senate an agrarian law, giving lands in Campania to Pompeius' soldiers. Pompeius and Crassus spoke in its favour; Cato and Bibulus strongly opposed it, and wasted time in talking till the day was over. Then Cæsar withdrew his law from the Senate and brought it before the Assembly. The aristocrats tried to stop the voting by force, but were defeated.

Next Bibulus retired to his house, and declared that he was examining the heavens to see if there were any bad omens, a proceeding which, according to law, prevented any public business being done; but Cæsar took no notice, and the law was carried. Thereupon Bibulus refused to act as consul any more; so Cæsar, wholly unmoved, continued to act alone, and carried other laws in defiance of the Senate, one of which was for ratifying Pompeius' acts in the East. And the wits of Rome declared that it was the consul-

ship, not of Bibulus and Cæsar, but of Julius and Cæsar.

**Cæsar obtains Gaul as his Province.**—When his consulship was over Cæsar would, under Sulla's law, be governor of a province for a year; but he wished for a special command like Pompeius had had against the pirates and Mithridates. It happened just at this time that dangers were a second time threatening the province of Gallia Narbonensis (see page 176). So by the influence of Pompeius a law was passed by the people giving that province to Cæsar with Cisalpine Gaul *for five years* instead of only one.

In the spring of B.C. 58 Cæsar started for his governorship, leaving Pompeius and Crassus to manage his interests at Rome. Of the two new consuls one was his own father-in-law, the other an adherent of Pompeius; so there was not much chance of the Senate getting the better of him.

**Banishment of Cicero, B.C. 58.**—To make things quite secure, it was determined to remove from Rome the two most formidable men on the side of the Senate, Cicero and Cato. Cato was given a commission to annex Cyprus, which he accepted. Strong hints were given to Cicero. Cæsar, wishing to spare him humiliation, even offered him a post on his staff; but he obstinately refused, and declared that he would stay at Rome. So a reckless young noble named Clodius, a follower of Cæsar, and at this time tribune, who had for some time been attacking Cicero for his execution of the Catilinarian conspira-

tors, was now encouraged to bring in a law that anyone who should have put to death a Roman citizen without appeal should be forbidden fire and water—that is, banished.

Cicero was in despair; he put on mourning, and many of the senators and knights followed his example. But the consuls were against him: Cæsar and his army were still outside the gates ready to support Clodius if necessary. As a last resource he appealed to Pompeius, but with no better success. The Senate advised him to bow before the storm. In the deepest dejection he sailed from Brundisium for Greece, whence he wrote letters to his friends full of the keenest grief and bitter reflections on the ingratitude of the Romans, who could thus banish the "Father of his Country". He was at once declared an exile, his property confiscated, and his favourite villas destroyed. Could there be any greater proof of the utter weakness of the Senate than its powerlessness to save Cicero from such unworthy treatment?

## CHAPTER XXV.

### *CÆSAR IN GAUL AND POMPEIUS AT ROME.*

	B.C.
Cæsar defeats the Helvetii and Germans, . . . . .	58
Defeat of the Nervii, . . . . .	57
Recall of Cicero, . . . . .	57
Conquest of the Veneti, . . . . .	56
Conference of Luca, . . . . .	56
Expedition across Rhine and First Invasion of Britain, . . . . .	55
Second Invasion of Britain—Revolt of the Nervii,	54
Death of Julia, . . . . .	54
Battle of Carrhæ—Death of Crassus, . . . . .	53
Revolt of Gaul under Vercingetorix—Siege of Alesia, . . . . .	52
Pompeius breaks with Cæsar and joins the Senate, . . . . .	52
Cæsar crosses the Rubicon, . . . . .	49

**The Gauls.**—The time had now come when the Roman nation was about to exact its long delayed vengeance on the Gallic nation for the defeat of the Allia and the capture of Rome by Brennus and his Gauls more than 300 years before (B.C. 390). You will remember that, after they retired from Rome, the Gauls were beaten in many wars, and driven back

to their settlements in the north of Italy (Gallia Cisalpina) where they were gradually conquered; and you have heard of the other Gallic tribes dwelling in Gaul beyond the Alps (Gallia Transalpina) and in Britain. The different tribes of the Gauls had never been able to join themselves together into a single strong nation, but were always split up by mutual jealousies and rivalry. Had it been otherwise, these fierce barbarians would have been a terrible source of danger to the Romans.

**The Germans.**—East of the Rhine was another great nation of barbarian tribes, fiercer and wilder than the Gauls, kinsmen of the ill-fated Cimbri. They were the Germans, ancestors of the modern Germans and of the English, and also, like the Gauls, once part of that ancient nation to which the Romans and Greeks belonged. They were a restless nation, ever trying to press westward and southward; for five centuries after this it taxed all the energy and resources of the Roman empire to keep them at bay, and it was at their hands that its overthrow at last came.

It was to repel these Germans that Cæsar was now sent to Gaul. They were threatening Gaul at two points: in the south they had long been attacking the Gallic tribe of the Helvetii, who dwelt between the Alps and the Jura mountains in what is now part of Switzerland, so that at last the Helvetii, despairing of their country, destroyed their own towns, and started a mighty host, 400,000 men, women, and children,



towards the Atlantic, to find fresh settlements. Also twelve years before the Gallic tribe of the Sequāni, struggling for supremacy with their rivals the Ædui, who were dependents of Rome, had called in Ariovistus, a German chief from over the Rhine. After a long war Ariovistus had defeated the Ædui (B.C. 61); but the Sequani found that it was easier to bring in Ariovistus than to get rid of him again, and that the price which they would have to pay for his aid would be the loss of their own lands and freedom.

Cæsar's wars in Gaul fall naturally into three distinct periods: (1) his wars of defence against the Helvetii and Germans, B.C. 58; (2) his conquest of Gaul, and invasions of Britain and Germany, B.C. 57-54; (3) his suppression of small insurrections, and of the final insurrection under Vercingetorix, B.C. 54-51.

### **First Period—Wars of Defence against the Helvetii and Germans, B.C. 58.**

**Defeat of the Helvetii.**—When Cæsar reached "the Province," he had only one single legion with him. But the danger from the Helvetii was pressing, so he hurried to Lacus Lemānus (Lake of Geneva), in which direction they were advancing. The Helvetii sent envoys, humbly asking for a passage through the "Province," promising to do no damage. He refused, and barred the way by rapidly fortifying the bank of the Rhone for nineteen miles between the lake and the mountains. They now had to go by a

difficult way between the Jura and the Rhone through the land of the Sequani; and Cæsar had time to return to Italy and bring up more legions. He then hurried after the Helvetii, whose irruption was causing the greatest dismay among the other Gallic tribes.

For some time he followed them in vain. At last, when he was nearly tired out, they turned and attacked him themselves. After a terrible battle, they were routed, and their camp taken. The survivors, only a quarter of the original number, were granted their lives, on condition they returned to their homes, rebuilt their cities, and defended them against the Germans.

**Defeat of Ariovistus.**—For this exploit the chiefs of the Ædui and other tribes came and thanked Cæsar as their protector. Afterwards the Ædui and Sequani together implored him with tears to save them also from Ariovistus. Cæsar consented, and ordered him to recross the Rhine. "You Romans have your province in Gaul, I will have mine," was the only answer of the proud barbarian.

So war was declared. But a sudden panic, originating in the young nobles serving as officers in the army, seized the Roman soldiers when they heard that they were going to fight against these new barbarian foes, of whose appearance and hardihood they had heard wonderful tales. Cæsar reminded them of the victories of Marius over these same barbarians, and said, "You may stay behind if you like; I will go at any rate, even with the Tenth Legion only". The men of the Tenth



LEGIONARIES MAKING FORTIFICATIONS.

were delighted at this mark of confidence ; and the rest of the army, for very shame, ceased their murmurs. In a single battle the Germans were utterly conquered, and fled in headlong rout for fifty miles to the Rhine ; a few, including Ariovistus, got over in boats, the rest were cut down by the Roman cavalry.

## **Second Period—Conquest of Gaul—Invasions of Britain and Germany, B.C. 57-54.**

**Defeat of the Nervii, B.C. 57.**—These two great feats of arms established the supremacy of the Romans over the centre of Gaul. But the Belgæ, a number of tribes in the north-east, in the following year, determined to drive out the Roman invaders before they had obtained a firm footing in the country. One Belgic tribe joined Cæsar, and the others attacked it with 300,000 men. Cæsar, by his skilful manœuvres, broke up the huge host and crushed the tribes separately. But the Nervii, the fiercest and bravest of all the Belgæ, held out to the last ; and, when Cæsar was advancing against them, completely surprised the Roman army by a well laid ambush in a wood. It required all Cæsar's skill and coolness to beat off the attacks of the barbarians : in spite of all his efforts, some of his men were beginning to fly when the Tenth Legion, which, under an able officer, named Labiēnus, had been victorious on the left, came to the rescue of the main body. The Nervii were cut to pieces, and all the Belgæ submitted. This victory caused great rejoicings at

Rome ; a fifteen days' thanksgiving was decreed, an honour which had never been conferred on any other general.

**Conquest of the Veneti and the rest of Gaul, B.C. 56.**—During the next year expeditions were made by Cæsar and his officers against the tribes which were still unconquered. All of them submitted, one by one, and thus, in only three years, Cæsar had brought the whole of Gaul under the Roman sway. The only expedition that need be mentioned was against the Venēti, a tribe living on the sea-coast, near the mouth of the Liger (Loire). Secure in their creeks, with a fleet of big ocean-going sailing ships, they fancied that they could defy Cæsar and his land army. But there were few things that Cæsar's legionaries could not turn their hands to, and he quickly set them shipbuilding on the Loire under Decimus Brutus. His vessels were mere boats compared with those of the enemy ; but in the battle he cut their sail ropes with sickles tied to poles and so made them unmanageable. The fleet of the Veneti was destroyed, their chiefs slain, and the rest of the tribe sold into slavery.

**Cæsar invades Britain, B.C. 55 and 54.**—In B.C. 55 another German tribe crossed the Rhine, but Cæsar inflicted a crushing defeat on it, very few surviving to tell the tale, and followed his success up by crossing the Rhine ; but he only remained a few days in Germany. In the autumn he resolved to invade Britain, the white cliffs of which he could just see

from the coast of Gaul. But the Britons, with their scythe chariots, gathered on the cliffs to oppose the invasion. The Roman fleet coasted towards Deal, where the shore was flat; the Britons followed along the coast, and at the landing a sharp struggle took place. For some time the depth of the water baffled the legionaries, till a standard-bearer of the Tenth leapt into the sea with his eagle, calling to his comrades, "Follow me, unless you wish the eagle to be captured". The soldiers were fired by his example, and the landing was accomplished. Then the Britons asked for peace, which Cæsar granted. But a few days afterwards an unexpected high tide damaged the Roman fleet, whereupon the Britons, taking heart, attacked again. At first the scythe chariots caused great dismay in the Roman ranks; but discipline prevailed, and the Britons were routed. As autumn was coming on, Cæsar, having ordered the British tribes to send hostages, now sailed back to Gaul.

Next year (B.C. 54) Cæsar landed again with a larger army. The Britons put themselves under Casivellaunus, a chief who ruled north of the Thames; but Cæsar forced his way to the Thames, and forded it some way above the site of London. The Britons tried to stop him by planting sharp stakes in the river-bed, the remains of which are said to have been found near Walton, in Surrey; but the legionaries crossed with the water up to their necks. After ineffectual attempts to surprise the Romans, Cassivellaunus submitted. Cæsar imposed a tribute on

the Britons and departed. The tribute was never paid ; but Cæsar never again had leisure to renew the invasion. It was not till one hundred years afterwards that the real conquest of Britain began.

**Pompeius inclines towards the Senate—Recall of Cicero, B.C. 57.**—Whilst Cæsar had been engaged in his victorious career in Gaul, matters had not been going so well for him and his friends at Rome. His ally, the tribune Clodius, had gathered round him an armed band of ruffians, with which he frightened the Senate and his opponents. But he gave great offence to Pompeius, who was beginning to feel that his alliance with Cæsar was all to Cæsar's advantage, and not at all to his own. So Pompeius began to incline towards the Senate, and consequently the consuls for the next year were on the side of the Senate, and it was resolved to recall Cicero. Clodius, with his ruffians, tried to stop the law being passed, but Milo, a tribune on the side of the Senate, followed Clodius' example and also armed a band of gladiators. Fights took place in the streets. Clodius was beaten, and the law was passed. Cicero returned amid universal joy. Multitudes thronged the Appian Road to welcome him.

**Conference at Luca.**—Cæsar determined to bring Pompeius over to his side again, for he did not feel strong enough yet to hold his own against the Senate and Pompeius together. So, early in B.C. 56, before his campaigning began, he asked Pompeius and Crassus to meet him and discuss the state of

affairs. The meeting took place at Luca, a town in the very south of Cisalpine Gaul, on the borders of Etruria. No less than 200 senators were present at the conference, which was more like a king's court than a meeting of Roman nobles. The result was that Cæsar's personal influence quite won over the wavering Pompeius, and he agreed to desert the Senate and adhere to his alliance with Cæsar. Pompeius and Crassus were to be consuls for the year B.C. 55, and afterwards Pompeius was to have the province of Spain, Crassus that of Syria, each for five years. Cæsar's governorship, at the same time, was to be prolonged for five more years, till the end of B.C. 49, and the year after his governorship (B.C. 48) he was to be consul again. Thus the hope of the Senate of regaining power by the help of Pompeius was for a time disappointed. Cæsar was stronger than ever. You must remember this arrangement between Cæsar and Pompeius, for it was afterwards the cause of the Civil War.

But the Senate would not give in without a struggle. When the time for the election of the new consuls drew near in the autumn, the consuls for the year would not allow it to be held. January came, and no consuls had been elected; whereupon Pompeius and Crassus, in defiance of the Senate, got themselves elected by the aid of a body of Cæsar's veterans, who had come from Gaul, under the son of Crassus. Then Pompeius proposed laws to the people carrying out the arrangements made with Cæsar at



Luca, which were duly passed. The Senate were quite powerless. The next year Crassus, accompanied by his son, set off to the East to his province of Syria, where he hoped to imitate Cæsar's successes in Gaul by conquering the Parthians, desert tribes dwelling on the east of the Euphrates. Pompeius, however, did not go to his governorship in Spain, but sent an army thither under *legātī* (generals under the commander-in-chief), being afraid that if he were so far off he would lose his power and influence. This would have been illegal, had he not been entrusted with the office of supplying the market of Rome with corn.

**Defeat and Death of Crassus and his Son at Carrhæ, B.C. 53.**—Crassus was not a great soldier. His only exploits had been the battle of the Colline Gate and the defeat of Spartacus (B.C. 71). He had now a very different enemy to contend with in the treacherous Parthians, secure in their hot sandy desert, who fought with poisoned arrows and were mounted on swift arab horses. Disregarding the advice of those who knew better, and trusting to an Arabian guide, in the spring of B.C. 53 he boldly crossed the Euphrates and plunged into the terrible desert between that river and the Tigris. Day after day the legionaries, weighed down with their arms and packs, with the eastern sky beating down upon them, struggled on over the glaring sandy waste after an enemy who hardly ever showed himself.

At last one day the Arabian guide disappeared, and soon the swarms of the Parthians were upon them, the

Arabian with them. All day long the legions, formed into a square, were an easy target for the showers of Parthian arrows. Young Crassus, at the head of some Gallic cavalry, tried to drive off the enemy, but he was surrounded, his men shot down, and in despair he slew himself. In the evening, the Parthians, satisfied with their work, rode off. Crassus, wholly unnerved, could do nothing; but an officer named C. Cassius, afterwards Cæsar's murderer, led the broken forces by night to the neighbouring town of Carrhæ. Thence the retreat began. One division, under Cassius, reached Syria; the other, under Crassus, was within a day's march of the mountains of Armenia when the Parthians reappeared and offered peace. Crassus unsuspectingly went to their camp to negotiate, where he was treacherously murdered, and the army then cut to pieces and their standards captured. His head was brought to the Parthian king, who, in mockery of his love of wealth, caused molten gold to be poured down his throat.

Great was the consternation at Rome at the news of this disaster, the greatest blow since Arausio. Cassius indeed beat the Parthians back from Syria, but the spoils of victory, the Roman eagles and prisoners, remained in their hands, an indelible disgrace to Rome. The Eagles were not recovered till the reign of Augustus.

**Pompeius supreme at Rome.—He breaks with Cæsar, B.C. 52.**—The death of Crassus had a very important result: it removed the one man who

stood between Pompeius and Cæsar. It was all the more unfortunate that it should happen at this time as the year before (B.C. 54) another link between them had been broken by the death of Pompeius' wife and Cæsar's daughter Julia. Pompeius was growing more and more jealous of his ally, who was becoming much too powerful ; his only chance seemed to be to break with him and put himself at the head of the party of the Senate, but he still hesitated to take any decided step, greatly disliking the Senate at the bottom of his heart.

Meanwhile, disorder and anarchy reigned at Rome, owing to the street fights between the armed gangs of Clodius and Milo. Milo tried to be elected consul in the autumn of B.C. 53, and Clodius fiercely opposed him. At last, in January B.C. 52, they accidentally met on the Appian Road, a few miles from Rome ; an affray took place and Clodius was killed. The mob was furious at the death of its hero ; they attacked the house of Milo, and in making a funeral pyre for Clodius burnt the senate house to the ground. Confusion reigned in the city. Everyone looked to Pompeius as the only man who could restore order, so the Senate, contrary to law, named him sole consul ; and order was soon restored in the streets. Pompeius was now supreme at Rome, and felt himself strong enough to defy Cæsar. He broke off his alliance with him, and definitely declared himself the champion of the Senate. Cæsar could do nothing, for, just at this time, a general rebellion had broken

out in Gaul, to which we must now again turn our attention.

### Third Period of the Gallic War—Suppression of Insurrections, B.C. 54-51.

**Rebellion of the Belgæ.**—For two years the Gauls had submitted to the Roman yoke. Then they determined to make one more effort for freedom. The storm burst first in the north-east, in the country of the fierce Belgæ, in the winter of B.C. 54-53. Owing to the difficulty of getting provisions, the legions were widely scattered this year in their winter quarters. Taking advantage of this the Belgæ suddenly rose, and fell upon two of the camps. One commander foolishly entered into negotiations and was induced to abandon his camp by a promise that he should be allowed to join Cæsar; but while on the march he was treacherously attacked and the legion cut to pieces. The other commander, Quintus Cicero, brother of the great orator, refused all offers, and was fiercely besieged by the Nervii. News of his dangerous position at length reached Cæsar, who hurried to his relief and conquered the Nervii a second time. He found hardly a man unwounded in Cicero's camp. During the rest of the year he was occupied in stamping out the rebellion, in which task his legatus Labienus specially distinguished himself.

**General Rising of the Gauls under Vercingetorix, B.C. 52.**—Rumours also of the position of affairs in Rome reached Gaul; and, thinking the op-

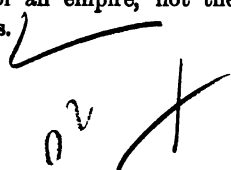
portunity too good to be missed, the Arverni, under their chief Vercingetōrix, rebelled with other tribes to the north who murdered the Roman settlers at Cenābūm (Orleans). Cæsar hurried over the Alps just in time to save the "Province" from invasion. He skilfully collected his troops, took and sacked Cenabum, sent Labienus with four legions to the north, advanced himself with six against Vercingetorix and besieged Gergovia the capital of the Arverni. There, owing to the over-confidence of his soldiers, he was severely defeated, and obliged to abandon the siege. The Ædui who had been wavering now joined the rebels and soon all Gaul was in rebellion, united for once.

### **Siege of Alesia—Final conquest of Gaul.—**

Cæsar at once sent for Labienus, who joined him after defeating the rebels in the north; he then defeated Vercingetorix, who shut himself up in Alesia, a town in a very strong position on the top of a hill in the centre of Gaul. Cæsar made a ditch and wall round the town eleven miles in circuit, so that no provisions could reach the defenders. Then the Gauls collected a huge army of 250,000 and marched to the relief of Alesia, and Cæsar was now besieged in his turn. Several days of desperate fighting ensued. The Roman lines were assaulted at the same time both from within and without; but discipline prevailed; the relieving army was at last beaten off, and Labienus with the cavalry fell upon them in their retreat. Further resistance was hopeless. Next day Vercingetorix, in full armour, rode into the Roman camp and sur-

rendered himself, as the cause of the rebellion, to save the lives of his fellow-countrymen. So ended the last great struggle of the Gauls for freedom. The unhappy Vercingetorix was sent as a prisoner to Rome. Seven years afterwards he was led in Cæsar's triumph, and then, such was the cruel Roman custom, killed in cold blood.

The rest of this year and the next was spent in completing the pacification of the country and organising its future government. Merciless as Cæsar had been in the war, which during eight years is said to have cost nearly a million Gallic lives, he showed himself so humane and generous when it was over, that Gaul at once became the most contented and loyal of all the Roman provinces. He wished Rome to be the head of an empire, not the oppressor of conquered nations.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

### *THE CIVIL WAR BETWEEN CÆSAR AND POMPEIUS.*

	B.C.
Pompeius driven from Italy, . . . .	49
Surrender of Pompeius' army in Spain, and of Massilia, . . . .	49
Defeat and death of Curio in Africa, . . . .	49
Cæsar crosses from Brundisium to Greece, . .	48
His defeat at Dyrrhachium, . . . .	48
Battle of Pharsalia, . . . .	48
Murder of Pompeius, . . . .	48

**Cæsar's offers to the Senate.**—At Rome Cæsar's enemies, now that they had got Pompeius on to their side, were full of confidence. Cato declared his intention of prosecuting him when his governorship was over, and the consul Marcellus proposed in the Senate that he should be recalled at once (B.C. 51). But it was determined to put the question off for a year. So in the spring of B.C. 50 the attacks began again. Cæsar's chief supporter at Rome, now that Clodius was dead, was an able but profligate young noble named Curio. His father had been a follower of Sulla and an enemy of Cæsar, and he himself was elected tribune for this year by the influence of

Pompeius and the Senate ; but Cæsar had won him over to his side by paying his debts, and his services proved most valuable.

It had been arranged between Cæsar and Pompeius at the conference of Luca (see page 261) that Cæsar should remain proconsul of Gaul till the end of B.C. 49, and in the autumn of B.C. 49 should be elected consul. Cæsar wished to be elected consul without coming to Rome, though it was contrary to law, because he knew that if he became a private citizen for ever so short a period, while Pompeius, as proconsul of Spain, still had an army, he would be at the mercy of his enemies. The year passed in fruitless negotiations. Cæsar, through Curio, said that he would give up his army and province if Pompeius would do the same ; but Pompeius refused. Then the Senate, by an unworthy trick, weakened Cæsar's army. On the pretence of a Parthian war to avenge Crassus, he and Pompeius were requested to give up a legion each. Pompeius named a legion which he had lent to Cæsar at the time of the rebellion of Vercingetorix, and Cæsar promptly sent it home with one of his own. Pompeius kept the two legions thus taken from Cæsar in Italy, and never sent them to Syria at all. He was at this time most confident. "I have but to stamp my foot," he said, "and legions will spring from the soil of Italy."

The Senate orders Cæsar to give up his Province—Cæsar crosses the Rubicon, Jan., 49.—On the 1st of January, B.C. 49, Curio brought a



letter from Cæsar, who was with one legion at Ravenna, in the east of Cisalpine Gaul, renewing his offer to resign if Pompeius would do so also ; but the Senate passed a decree that Cæsar must give up his province on pain of being declared a public enemy. This decree was vetoed by two of the tribunes of the new year, Marcus Antonius, afterwards so famous, and Q. Cassius ; but they were obliged to flee to Cæsar to save their lives. Cæsar at once put himself at the head of his legion and crossed the Rubicon, the little stream which divided his province from Italy, and the Civil War began. The Senate hoped that when the decisive moment came many of his troops would abandon him ; but the only deserter was Labienus, the ablest of his legati. Cæsar, without a word of reproach, sent his baggage after him.

✓ **Cæsar drives Pompeius out of Italy.**—When Cæsar crossed the Rubicon the odds seemed greatly against him. Pompeius and the Senate held Italy and most of the provinces ; they had a large army of seven legions in Spain, and the fleet ; and Pompeius had the greater reputation as a general. Cæsar had only his Gallic legions. But Pompeius, in spite of his boast, was still unprepared. The rapidity with which Cæsar was advancing utterly upset all his plans, so he abandoned Rome, breathing vengeance against Cæsar, followed by the consuls and his other adherents, including Cicero. In such haste were they to escape that they did not even take the money out of the treasury. Pompeius soon found that his boast

had been an idle one; he could not trust the two legions which he had taken from Cæsar, and dared not pit his recruits against the veterans of Gaul. So he continued his retreat to the port of Brundisium, and prepared to cross over to Greece, for he thought that in the East, where the glory of his victories was still great, he might collect fresh forces and return in triumph to Italy like Sulla. Cæsar, without approaching Rome, hurried on to Brundisium to try to capture Pompeius, every town he approached expelling its Pompeian commander and welcoming him. But Pompeius with his ships was too quick for him, and made his escape to Greece.

Thus, in sixty days, Cæsar had conquered the whole of Italy; his clemency, and the strict discipline which he exacted from his soldiers, had won the population over to his side. He now made his entry into Rome. Contrary to the general expectation, no proscriptions followed, but he summoned what was left of the Senate and declared to them that he had been forced to take up arms in self-defence, and was ready for peace if terms could be arranged.

**Cæsar conquers Spain—Summer of B.C. 49.**—Cæsar now started for Spain, where Pompeius' main army was under his legati, Afranius and Petreibus. On his march thither, Massilia (Marseilles) shut its gates against him. Leaving behind Decimus Brutus and Trebonius to besiege it, he hurried on to Spain; there he found Afranius and Petreibus encamped near Ilerda, a town on the right bank of

Sicōris, which runs from the Pyrenees into the Ibērus (Ebro). For a time he was in great straits for provisions, as his bridges were washed away by a flood, and rumours of his defeat actually reached Rome. But he succeeded in crossing the river, and used his cavalry so skilfully that the Pompeians, cut off in their turn from supplies, knew not which way to turn. The two armies, in spite of all Afranius and Petreius could do, began to fraternise, and there was nothing for them to do but surrender. Cæsar gave them the easiest terms: those who wished joined his army; the rest were allowed to go where they liked. Afranius and Petreius at once went off to Pompeius. Another Pompeian army in the south of Spain surrendered at Cæsar's approach and he returned to Gaul.

Meanwhile the fleet of the Massilians, which was their only hope, had been destroyed by the energy and resource of Decimus Brutus, the conqueror of the Veneti, and on his arrival the town surrendered and was treated most leniently, in consideration of its antiquity. Thence he returned to Rome, where he was elected consul for the next year, B.C. 48 (the consulship which had been the cause of the war), and then, after eleven days, hurried on to his army at Brundisium to prepare for the crossing into Greece. In this year he had marched nearly 4000 miles, conquered Italy and Spain, captured three armies and the almost impregnable fortress of Massilia. It was perhaps the most wonderful campaign in history.

**Defeat and Death of Curio in Africa.**—In Africa the fortune of war had gone against Cæsar. Juba, the king of Numidia, had joined the Pompeians, and Curio, who commanded Cæsar's forces, fell into a trap and with only a part of his forces, wearied with long marching, was suddenly attacked by the whole Numidian army. Seeing his men falling fast, and unable to bear the thought of facing Cæsar after losing the army entrusted to him, he spurred into the thickest of the fight and was slain. A very few of the army escaped to Italy; the rest, after surrendering to the Pompeian general, were massacred by Juba, a very different fate to that of the Pompeians in Spain. The death of the clever young Curio, the man in all Rome most like Cæsar himself, was a great loss to Cæsar, and perhaps to Rome also.

**Cæsar crosses over to Greece, January, 48.**—It was now late autumn. Cæsar, with about 30,000 men, lay at Brundisium, with Antonius as his second in command. Pompeius had collected an army double the number of Cæsar's, and was at Thessalonica, a seaport of Macedonia, surrounded by the Senatorial exiles. To prevent Cæsar crossing he had a large fleet cruising in the Adriatic under Bibulus, Cæsar's former colleague in the consulship. Cæsar himself had no men-of-war, and only a few transports. On these he embarked with half his army and was across before Bibulus could stop him; the transports were sent back to fetch the other half under An-

tonius, but Bibulus, now on the alert, caught some of the empty ships and vented his disappointed rage by burning them, crews and all. Cæsar at once seized Oricum and Apollonia, two important ports of Epīrus, and Pompeius, hurrying to Epīrus with his superior forces, was only just in time to save the great town of Dyrrhachium from also falling into his hands. But Pompeius dared not attack Cæsar. The two armies lay opposite each other; the winter was passing away; Antonius, in spite of urgent messages from Cæsar, feared to put to sea. So persistently did the Pompeian fleet keep the sea, in spite of the wintry weather, that Bibulus fell ill, and refusing to be put ashore, died of his exertions. At last, taking advantage of a southerly wind, Antonius started; the Pompeians hotly pursued, and the two fleets were carried by the gale along the coast of Epīrus in full sight of both armies. A lucky shifting of the wind enabled Antonius to land and wrecked the Pompeians, and he and Cæsar succeeded in eluding Pompeius and uniting their forces.

**Cæsar's Defeat at Dyrrhachium.**—Pompeius still would not fight; so Cæsar got between him and Dyrrhachium, and, with his inferior forces, had the audacity to blockade him on the coast with lines of fortifications over fifteen miles in extent. His boldness brought Greece and Macedonia over to his side; but he paid the penalty for it; for Pompeius broke through his lines at one end by landing troops behind them, and won a victory over part of his forces. The

prisoners taken were cruelly insulted and then killed by Labienus.

Cæsar now retreated into Thessaly; Pompeius followed, and the two armies encamped opposite one another, near the town of Pharsālus, on the Enipeus.



ROMAN CAVALRY SOLDIER.

**Battle of Pharsalia, August, B.C. 48.**—Labienus and the other nobles were in high spirits after their victory at Dyrrhachium, and were already quarrelling over the spoils of the expected victory,

but Pompeius himself seemed far from confident, and for some time refused battle. At length, when Cæsar, in despair of bringing him to action, was just going to march away, Pompeius, on 9th August, B.C. 48, drew out his forces, and the decisive day had come. Pompeius trusted chiefly to his cavalry, 7000 strong, whom he put on his left ; his infantry, 47,000 strong, were drawn up, according to the Roman custom, in three lines. Cæsar had only 22,000 infantry, but he made a small fourth line as a reserve, and also mixed some of his most active men with his cavalry, who numbered only 1000. The battle began : Cæsar's legions advanced at the double, but the Pompeians remained halted ; so the Cæsarians stopped half-way to take breath, and then closed with the enemy, and, in spite of numbers, held their own. Meanwhile, the Pompeian cavalry overpowered Cæsar's, in spite of the infantry mixed with them. The battle seemed won, and they were just about to charge the legions in rear, when Cæsar gave the signal to his reserve. Though they were infantry, their onset was so unexpected that they utterly routed the cavalry, numerous as it was, and drove it right off the field. Pompeius at once gave up all for lost, and retired to defend the camp. Cæsar's reserve then continued its victorious career by falling upon the rear of the Pompeian infantry, who quickly broke and fled to the camp ; but the Cæsarians pressed on after them, the camp was stormed, and Pompeius mounted a horse and rode out of the opposite gate.

In the camp Cæsar's men found tables spread for a banquet, and tents decked with ivy, to celebrate the victory. But Cæsar did not let them linger over the spoils; he hurried them after the enemy, lest they should have time to rally, and by the next morning fifteen thousand Pompeians had fallen, and twenty-four thousand surrendered. Pompeius' army was no more, and Cæsar was now master of the Roman world.

**Murder of Pompeius.**—Pompeius fled to Egypt. There a civil war for the throne was in progress between a young brother and sister, Ptolemy and Cleopatra. Pompeius appealed to Ptolemy for protection, but he was afraid of the illustrious exile: so he had him enticed on shore and murdered in the sight of his wife and son, who had joined him in his flight.

It was a sad end to a great career. Pompeius was a good man, far better than most of the Romans of his time, and an able general; but his want of firmness and decision prevented him from being a great statesman. Accident made him for a time the greatest man at Rome; he wished to remain so, but knew not how. So he became jealous of every rival, especially Cæsar. Cæsar bore no personal ill-will to Pompeius, the husband of his dearly loved daughter. But he was resolved to overthrow the Senate; he would have preferred to do so in alliance with Pompeius; but, when Pompeius joined the Senate, he was obliged to fight him. All through the war he had been anxious for a personal interview to settle their differences as they had settled them before: but Pompeius had always refused.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### *CÆSAR MASTER OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.*

	B.C.
Cæsar in Egypt, . . . . .	47
Battle of Thapsus, . . . . .	46
Suicide of Cato, . . . . .	46
<u>Cæsar's Laws—Reform of the Calendar,</u> . . . . .	46
Battle of Munda—Cæsar made Dictator for life,	45
Murder of Cæsar, . . . . .	44

**Cæsar in Egypt—Cleopatra—Conquest of Pharnaces, B.C. 47.**—Cæsar, hearing whither Pompeius had fled, followed hard after, and landed with a small force in Alexandria. There he was shown the head of Pompeius, with his ring; he gazed on it with deep sorrow, and ordered it to be burned.

In the Egyptian Civil War he took the side of Cleopatra, fascinated by her wonderful beauty, and soon found that he had all Egypt against him. For some months he could barely hold his own in Alexandria; on one occasion, in the harbour, he had to swim for his life. Meanwhile, he had been made dictator for the second time, and had named Antonius his Master of the Horse (see page 57), to govern Italy. In the spring of B.C. 47, help reached

Cæsar; a battle was fought on the Nile, the Egyptians were conquered, and Ptolemy drowned. Some months afterwards Cæsar left Egypt and started homewards through Syria and Asia Minor. On the way he reduced Pharnāces, king of Pontus, son of the great Mithridates, who had thought to take advantage of the Civil War, and extend his dominions. A five days' campaign and a single battle reduced Pharnaces to submission, and Cæsar announced the result to the Senate in the words, "*Veni, vidi, vici*" (I came, I saw, I conquered).

**Mutiny of Cæsar's Veterans—The Pompeians in Africa.**—Labienus, Cato, and the other Pompeians who had survived Pharsalia, had made their way to Africa, and were gathering strength for a fresh resistance. At Utica they had assembled a sort of Senate. The more hopeless their cause became, the more furious were their threats of vengeance against their enemies. In the autumn of B.C. 47 Cæsar reached Rome, and at once began to prepare for the invasion of Africa. But the legionaries, his favourite Tenth among them, weary of the long war, and having now for a year enjoyed the luxuries of peace, did not relish the thought of another campaign, and marched on the city, demanding their dismissal. Cæsar went out to meet them, and said to them: "Your request is granted; you shall have all the rewards promised you; but you will not be able to share in my Triumph". And then he addressed them, not, as usual, "fellow-soldiers," but

"citizens". To be thus disowned by their general was too much. With tears and protestations they begged him to punish them in any way he chose, but not to dismiss them from his service. Cæsar kept them in suspense for a time as a punishment, and then yielded. The mutiny was over, quelled with a word.

**Battle of Thapsus—Suicide of Cato, B.C. 46.**—Before the close of the year he had landed in Africa, near Thapsus, south of Carthage; but such was his haste that he had only been able to bring one legion and a handful of cavalry. The other legions could not join him for some time, owing to the wintry weather. The Pompeians had ten legions, with the elephants and Numidian cavalry of Juba. They were commanded by Metellus Scipio, Pompeius' father-in-law, a man of no ability, aided by Labienus. Cato was left in command of the garrison of Utica.

In spite of their numbers, Cæsar held his own with wonderful skill until his other legions had arrived. At Thapsus, in the spring of B.C. 46, the battle was fought. Cæsar's men, impatient to end the war, charged before the word of command could be given. The elephants were driven back on their own infantry, and, with a loss of only fifty men, Cæsar won a complete victory; his men in spite of his orders would give no quarter. Labienus and the two sons of Pompeius escaped to Spain; all the other chiefs perished in various ways. When the news reached Cato at Utica, he recognised that his cause was now lost. Deter-

mined not to survive the Republic and see his old enemy Cæsar ruling at Rome, he passed the night in reading a famous book of the philosopher Plato about immortality, and then stabbed himself.

So perished the only high-minded leader of the senatorial party. From the place of his death, he is commonly known as Cato of Utica, to distinguish him from his ancestor, Cato the censor.

**Julius Cæsar supreme at Rome—the title of Imperator.**—On his return to Rome in July Cæsar celebrated a magnificent fourfold Triumph for his conquest of Gaul, Pontus, Egypt, and of Juba, king of Numidia. His victories over his fellow-citizens were thus kept carefully out of sight. In this Triumph the unhappy Vercingetorix was led a prisoner, and afterwards put to death. The Roman state now lay at Cæsar's feet; but instead of imitating Sulla's cruelty, he continued his policy of mercy. Cicero and many other senatorial leaders submitted and were pardoned. A general amnesty was proclaimed; Pompeians and Cæsarians were treated alike. He was now made dictator for ten years. But it was felt that some new name was wanted for his extraordinary position; so the Senate conferred on him the title of Imperator (*impero*, "I command"). It was a Roman custom after a victory for the soldiers to salute their general as "imperator," so that it was a sort of complimentary title; and the general on whom it was conferred always put it after his other names; but in the sense in which it was given to Julius

Cæsar, meaning "a man vested with supreme power," it was usually put before the names, as Imperator Caius Julius Cæsar. From Imperator comes our word emperor; so Julius Cæsar may be said to have been the first Roman Emperor.

**Cæsar's Laws.**—Cæsar now proceeded to pass more laws. One was to check the oppression of the governors of provinces; for he wished the provinces to take pride in belonging to the great Roman empire, and no longer to look on Rome and the Senate as their hated mistress and oppressor. Another was to give the promised grants of land to his veterans; but he did not, as was often done, take away land from people already in possession of it; but those of his veterans for whom there was not room in Italy he sent abroad as colonists, and settled them where the famous old towns of Carthage and Corinth had been, which were thus again rebuilt.

**Reform of the Calendar.**—Amid all the stress and turmoil of politics, this wonderful man found time for another reform, which lasts even to the present day. This was the reform of the calendar. Hitherto the Roman year had consisted of only 355 days, that is, ten days short, and to correct this error it was the priests' business from time to time to insert an extra or, as it was called, an "intercalary" month. But this insertion was not always properly made, and the result was that the civil year became quite different from the solar year, and was now eighty days behind it. Farmers had to give up going

by the civil year, and were obliged to count only by the seasons, for the 1st of January came somewhere in autumn instead of the beginning of winter.

Cæsar, who was Pontifex Maximus, determined to remedy this strange state of things, and asked the advice of an Alexandrian astronomer. So a law was passed that the year B.C. 45 should consist of 445 days by putting in three intercalary months. This brought the 1st of January to its right place. To make the year the proper length in future, all the months except February were lengthened, and February was to have an extra day every four years. This was so nearly exact that it was 1600 years before any change, and that only a small one, had to be made. The year B.C. 45 was called by the Romans the year of confusion, but it ought more properly to be called the last year of confusion. ✓

**War in Spain—Battle of Munda, B.C. 45.—** All this work was done between July and September, 46, and then Cæsar was called away by the news that Labienus and Cnæus and Sextus, the two sons of Pompeius, were at the head of a large army in Spain.

Taking with him his great-nephew Caius Octavius, a young man seventeen years old, whom he destined to be his heir and successor, he hurried thither by forced marches. His opponents were skilful soldiers, especially his old officer Labienus, and they fought with desperation, for they knew that this was their last chance. After a campaign of some months, in which neither side gained much advantage, Cæsar

attacked Labienus and Cnæus Pompeius in a very strong position near the town of Munda in the south of Spain. So strong was the position that Cæsar's men were time after time driven back. Defeat stared him in the face, and at one moment he actually thought of killing himself ; but he rallied his men, and the valour of the Tenth legion at last won the day. Labienus, his old officer, and afterwards the most relentless of all his foes, was at last killed. Cnæus Pompeius fled wounded, and was killed soon after. Sextus Pompeius was not present at the battle and so escaped, and we shall hear of him again. After some time spent in completely reducing Spain to submission, Cæsar returned, after a year's absence, and celebrated a Triumph, though he could not now pretend that the vanquished were not Roman citizens.

**Cæsar Emperor of Rome.**—Fresh honours now awaited him. He was made dictator for life and consul for ten years. His head was put on the coins, and the month Quintilis was changed in his honour to Julius (July), and he was almost worshipped as a god.

Cæsar was not satisfied with merely enjoying the honours of his high position ; he wished to carry out his work of making Rome the real capital of the world. He made all the Cisalpine Gauls and many provincials Roman citizens, and introduced many even into the Senate, which had been much reduced in the Civil War, much to the disgust of the Romans. He also wished to heal the great evils of Italy—the debt,

and the slave labour, and free distribution of corn; and he succeeded in reducing by half the number of people who received corn, but he dared not abolish the custom altogether. Lastly, the frontiers of the empire needed to be made secure. The two enemies of Rome still unsubdued were the Germans and Parthians. Cæsar determined to conquer the Parthians first, and win back the standards which were lost under Crassus at Carrhæ. So an army was collected at Apollonia in Epirus, whither he sent Octavius, intending himself to take the field the next summer.

**Cæsar believed to be aiming at Royalty.**—But though his rule was wise, Cæsar's position was by no means secure. The mass of the people did not, indeed, mind his having such great power, for he used it on their side against the Senate; but he let it be known that he intended young Octavius to succeed to his power after him, which was an unheard-of thing at Rome; so they thought from his conduct that he wished to become king, and since the time of the Tarquins the name king had been hateful to the Romans. He also offended his own followers by treating Pompeians and Cæsarians exactly alike; and the most worthless of his party were disappointed that there were no proscriptions. In February, B.C. 44, a crown was actually offered him, at a feast called Lupercalia, by his adherent Antonius, who was consul. Perhaps he would have liked to take it, but the people looked angry, and he put it aside, saying, "Jupiter alone is king of the Romans".



**The Conspiracy.**—Taking advantage of this feeling, a number of nobles, some of them his own followers and most trusted friends, who were jealous of his power, and thought that they could restore the rule of the Senate, made a conspiracy to kill him. The chiefs of the conspiracy were C. Cassius, who had rescued the remains of Crassus' army at Carrhæ, and Decimus Brutus, his old officer in Gaul, and they drew into the plot Marcus Brutus, nephew and son-in-law of Cato. Marcus Brutus was a favourite of the people, and traced his descent from Brutus, the expeller of the Tarquins. He had taken the side of Pompeius, but after Pharsalia had come over to Cæsar, and was much beloved by him and treated almost as a son. It was believed that on the Ides (*i.e.*, the 15th) of March the Senate was going to bestow the title of king on Cæsar everywhere but in Italy, so that day was selected for the deed. There were a great many in the plot, and rumours of it got abroad and even reached Cæsar, who was told by a soothsayer to beware the Ides of March; but he treated all warnings with contempt. "It is better to die once," he used to say, "than to live always in fear of dying."

**Murder of Cæsar, March 15, B.C. 44.**—When the morning came, the conspirators assembled at his house to escort him to the Senate. It is said that, owing to a dream of his wife, at first he did not wish to go, but Decimus Brutus was sent to overcome his scruples. On the way several people tried to warn him. In the crowd he caught sight of the soothsayer,

and remarked to him: "The Ides of March have come". "Yes, Cæsar, but not gone," was the reply. The Senate house was reached, and Cæsar took his seat. One of the conspirators, under pretence of a private conversation, kept Antonius, who was still loyal to Cæsar, outside talking, for they did not wish to kill him too. Another presented a petition to Cæsar for the recall of his brother from exile. It was rejected, and the others, as if to second the appeal, crowded round him. A blow from behind, struck by one called Casca, gave the signal. At once all the daggers flashed in the air. For a moment Cæsar tried to defend himself; but, when he saw Marcus Brutus' dagger among the rest, he exclaimed, "You too, my son," then, drawing his toga over his head, he sank, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of his old enemy Pompeius' statue.

There was wild confusion in the senate house. The senators fled. Antonius escaped to his own house. The Liberators, as they called themselves, brandishing their dripping daggers, and shouting, "Rome again is free," rushed into the forum to gain the approval of the people, but the people had fled in horror. At last, fearing for their own safety, for there were soldiers encamped outside under Lepidus, an old general of Cæsar's, who was going as governor to Gaul, the Liberators retired for the night into the Capitol.

Thus fell Julius Cæsar, the greatest of all the Romans. He was ambitious, it is true, but he saw plainer than other men the evils of his time, the bad

government of the Senate, and the oppression of the provinces. He saw that his own side, the Popular Party, were a mere mob and could not govern, and so the only hope for Rome was for the government to be in the hands of one strong man ; and if he determined to make himself that man by his sword we cannot blame him. The time, it is true, was not ripe for the change ; there were still many Romans who believed in the old republican government. But that Cæsar was right is proved by the events which followed his murder. The freedom which the Liberators proclaimed was no real freedom, it was only a change of one master for several. And within fifteen years, after Roman swords had again made rivers of Roman blood flow, the republic disappeared unregretted, and the empire was finally established. ✓



COIN OF JULIUS CÆSAR. ✓

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### *THE SECOND TRIUMVIRATE—STRUGGLE BETWEEN OCTAVIUS AND ANTONIUS.*

	B.C.
Octavius comes to Italy, . . . . .	44
Siege of Mutina, . . . . .	43
Triumvirate of Octavius, Antonius, and Lepidus,	43
Proscriptions—Murder of Cicero, . . . . .	43
Battle of Philippi, . . . . .	42
Meeting of Antonius and Cleopatra, . . . . .	41
Defeat of Sextus Pompeius, . . . . .	36
Battle of Actium, . . . . .	31
Suicide of Antonius and Cleopatra, . . . . .	30

**Rome after Cæsar's Murder.**—At Rome all was dismay and consternation; no one knew what was going to happen next. Everyone feared for himself. The people were in doubt whether to approve the murder or not. Antonius was the first to recover from the panic; he obtained all Cæsar's papers from his widow Calpurnia and seized his treasury. All the old leaders of the Senate had perished in the Civil War except Cicero; he now took the lead. Negotiations were carried on between the Liberators, Antonius, and the Senate; and a meeting of the Senate was held, in which all Cæsar's acts were confirmed. An amnesty was promised to the Liberators, and Antonius was per-

mitted by the Senate to celebrate a public funeral in honour of Cæsar.

But that public funeral was a fatal blow for the Senate. For Antonius made a speech in which he recounted all that Cæsar had done for the people; then he showed an effigy of Cæsar clad in his torn and blood-stained toga; and, lastly, he read his will, in which Cæsar left his palace and gardens to the people, and a sum of money to every citizen. At this the crowd, among whom were many of Cæsar's veterans, were seized with fury, and, tearing firebrands from the funeral pile, rushed to the house of Brutus, and the Liberators were obliged to flee from the city.

**Supremacy of Antonius—Octavius comes to Italy.**—Antonius was now supreme. The Senate had decreed that all Cæsar's "Acts" should be carried out; and as Antonius was in possession of his papers, he could do what he liked; for he did not scruple to forge new "Acts" if necessary, having bribed Cæsar's clerk. Cæsar's money he spent himself, instead of distributing it among the people. There seemed no one to oppose him; for the chiefs of the Liberators went away to the provinces which Cæsar had allotted to them: Decimus Brutus to Cisalpine Gaul, Marcus Brutus to Macedonia, and Cassius to Syria. Cicero, indeed, made some eloquent and bitter speeches, and roused much feeling against him; and Octavius with his school-friend Agrippa landed at Brundisium and claimed his inheritance. But Cicero was an old man, and Octavius a raw youth of

nineteen, who knew nothing of war and politics, and Antonius feared neither of them.

But Octavius, in spite of his youth, and the entreaties of his mother, boldly put himself forward and demanded of Antonius an account of Cæsar's money, and, when he refused, he paid the legacies himself, by the help of his friends, and by selling all his own property, which gave him great popularity. Many of Cæsar's friends began to rally round him, some of Antonius' legions, among which were many of Cæsar's veterans, deserted to him, and the Senate supported him, thinking him a useful tool against Antonius.

**Civil War of Mutina—End of Decimus Brutus.**—At last, in the spring of the next year, B.C. 43, Antonius, finding that his position at Rome was growing insecure, put himself at the head of the legions still faithful to him, and marched off to Cisalpine Gaul to drive out Decimus Brutus; and again the flames of civil war blazed up in Italy. Decimus threw himself into the town of Mutina (Modena), where Antonius besieged him. The Senate sent an army to attack Antonius under the new consuls, and Octavius joined them with his legions. There was desperate fighting round Mutina: both the consuls were killed, but Antonius was defeated, and retreated to Gaul to join Lepidus, who had been sent there as governor by Cæsar. The Senate now seemed triumphant; but it was not to be. For Octavius, instead of joining Decimus, now threw off his allegiance to the Senate, and marched on Rome at the head of his legions and

those of the late consuls, and demanded the consulship, and the Senate were obliged to submit. At the same time Antonius re-entered Cisalpine Gaul in alliance with Lepidus. Decimus, finding his men deserting, tried to escape to the other Liberators in the east, but was caught and put to death by Antonius.

**Octavius, Antonius, and Lepidus Elected Triumvirs.**—Then Antonius, Octavius, and Lepidus met near Bononia (Bologna), and agreed to divide the empire. Antonius had found that the youth Octavius was stronger than he expected, and Octavius did not yet feel strong enough to oppose Antonius, so they agreed to sink their quarrel for the present, like Cæsar and Pompeius had done, and Lepidus, happening to be at the head of an army, was admitted into the alliance. The three then marched on Rome, and caused themselves to be elected “triumvirs to settle the state” *triumviri reipublicæ constituendæ*, for five years. Historians often call this alliance of Octavius, Antonius, and Lepidus, the *second* triumvirate, giving the name *first* triumvirate to the somewhat similar alliance of Cæsar, Pompeius, and Crassus, B.C. 60 (see page 248), although the latter were never really elected or called triumvirs.

### **Proscriptions at Rome—Murder of Cicero.**

—The Senate was now utterly crushed, and never recovered the blow. The only result of the murder of Cæsar was that, instead of one master, Rome now had three. Bloodshed began at once, for the triumvirs did not, like Cæsar, feel strong enough to do without proscriptions. A list of 300 senators and 2000

knights was drawn up, each triumvir giving up a friend or relation. Octavius also gave up Cicero, whom Antonius hated, on account of his recent speeches against him. The poor old man, utterly broken down and hopeless, tried feebly to escape to a ship from his villa on the coast ; but the litter in which he was being carried was overtaken by the murderers. His bearers were numerous enough to resist but he ordered them to leave him, and, putting out his grey head, submitted without a murmur. His head was sent to Antonius, whose wife, Fulvia, it is said, drove her needle through and through his tongue, in revenge for the bitter words it had uttered against her husband.

It was a sad end to a life that had begun so brightly. Cicero's victory over Catiline seemed the commencement of a great career. It was really the end. It wanted a man of resolution, and a soldier, to hold his own in those troubled times ; and he was neither. Like Cato, he made the mistake of thinking that the evils of Rome could be healed by restoring the power of the Senate ; and so he failed. Cicero was the greatest orator and writer of Rome ; his private life, in a dissolute age, was blameless, and he approaches the Christian character more than any other of the old Romans.

**Brutus and Cassius defeated at Philippi, B.C. 42.**—Having secured themselves at home, the triumvirs prepared to crush their enemies abroad. In the east, Brutus and Cassius had collected a large



army ; in the west, Sextus Pompeius had reappeared. He had a large fleet, and with his headquarters in Sicily was harrying the Mediterranean like the pirates of former days. It was arranged that Lepidus should stay at Rome, while Antonius went against the Liberators ; Octavius was to put down Sextus, but he found him too strong, and so, giving up the attempt, joined Antonius. Near the town of Philippi, in the east of Macedonia between the mountains and the sea, the two triumvirs with 100,000 men faced Brutus and Cassius with 80,000. The triumvirs had difficulty about provisions, and Cassius saw that the best thing to do was not to fight, but to leave the enemy to be broken up by famine, but he was overborne by the impetuous Brutus. In the battle Octavius was driven back by Brutus, but Antonius beat Cassius, who, thinking all was lost, killed himself. For three weeks more the two armies lay opposite one another ; then a second battle took place, the triumvirs were again victorious, and Brutus committed suicide. Such was the end of the Liberators and their attempt to restore freedom to Rome.

**Meeting of Antonius and Cleopatra, B.C. 41.**—After the battle of Philippi Octavius, who was very ill, returned to Italy ; Antonius remained in the East to organise the government of the different provinces. While he was at Tarsus he ordered Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, who had supported the Liberators, to appear before him and answer for her conduct. Cleopatra determined to fascinate him by her charms

as she had fascinated Cæsar. Attired like Venus, surrounded by Cupids and Graces, she sailed up the river Cydnus in a gilded galley with purple sails and rowed by silver oars to the sound of flutes and pipes. The whole city rushed to the riverside to see the wondrous sight. Antonius went on board, and at once fell an easy victim. He followed Cleopatra to Egypt, and there, amid the feasting and dissipation of an Eastern court forgot all his schemes for power and his rivalry with Octavius.

**Octavius in Italy.**—It was very foolish of Antonius to stay in the East and let Octavius return to Italy, for whoever ruled at Rome would naturally be regarded by the Romans as their chief. Octavius saw his advantage and set himself to win the affection of the Italians, and make them feel that the only way to escape from the present troubles was to submit to his rule and support him against all rivals. He had great difficulties to contend with; his veterans were clamouring for lands, and to satisfy them he had to deprive many farmers of their farms. At the same time Sextus Pompeius with his fleets cut off the corn supplies and caused great distress, and he had no fleet to fight him. But he persevered, and by his mild and firm rule Italy was again gradually beginning to enjoy the blessings of peace and order. ✓

**Octavius and Antonius divide the Empire, B.C. 40—Antonius marries Octavia.**—Antonius soon became jealous and civil war almost broke out. But the soldiers on both sides forced their generals

to make an agreement. They divided the empire between them, Octavius keeping the West, Antonius the East; and Antonius, whose wife, Fulvia, had lately died, married Octavia, sister of Octavius, the very noblest of Roman ladies. Then they had a meeting with Sextus on a ship in the harbour of Misenum in the Bay of Cumæ, and agreed to allow him to have Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica, and also Greece. It is said that at the meeting Sextus' captain sent in privately to ask him "whether he should carry the triumvirs off to sea"; Sextus replied: "You should have done it without asking for leave".

**Defeat and Death of Sextus Pompeius, B.C. 36.**—Antonius went off to the East with Octavia intending to keep away from Cleopatra, and busied himself with the preparations for a war against the Parthians. In the West the peace with Sextus was soon broken; Agrippa, Octavius' general, spent over a year in building a fleet, and Antonius sent 100 ships in return for soldiers for the Parthian war. In B.C. 36 there was a great naval war round the coasts of Sicily; Octavius with one fleet was defeated, but Agrippa won a great victory off Naulöchus, near Messāna. Sextus fled to the East, and was captured and killed by Antonius' men. The sea was now clear for the cornships. Italy was at rest, and Octavius was growing stronger and more popular every day. Lepidus, the third triumvir, of whom you have heard very little, tried to assert his independ-

ence after the war with Sextus ; but his men at once deserted to Octavius, who treated him with contemptuous kindness, and he lived for thirty years in unnoticed retirement, being allowed to retain his office of Pontifex Maximus.

**Failure of Antonius in Parthia, B.C. 36—He returns to Cleopatra.**—Antonius all this time was steadily losing ground. He grew tired of Octavia, and returned to Cleopatra. His Parthian war turned out an utter failure. He advanced with 100,000 men 300 miles beyond the Tigris, but was obliged to retreat again over the mountains of Armenia. He returned to Alexandria, and sought to drown his disappointment in pleasure and gaiety, reigning like an Eastern despot with Cleopatra.

**Indignation at Rome against Antonius.**—Exaggerated reports of all this reached Rome, where the slighted wife Octavia was living a quiet and virtuous life, busying herself with bringing up her own and Fulvia's children. And so men's minds were turned more and more against Antonius. His conduct, they said, was an insult to the majesty of Rome ; he had turned himself into an Egyptian ; if he had his way Italy would become a province of Egypt, and Cleopatra would reign as queen of the Roman empire. Octavius saw his advantage ; but still he held his hand, for time was on his side, and the indignation at Rome was growing louder and louder. At last (B.C. 32) Antonius' will was brought to Rome, in which he ordered that after his death his body

should be buried at Alexandria beside Cleopatra. This last insult to Rome and the noble Octavia was too much. War was declared against Cleopatra. Antonius took up the challenge by divorcing Octavia. The last act of the civil wars had begun.

**Battle of Actium, B.C. 31.**—Antonius had been reforming his army on the pretence of another Parthian war, and Cleopatra had joined him with a large contingent of Egyptian ships. These forces he moved to the west coast of Greece. He had over 100,000 men and 500 ships, many of them of immense size. Octavius, with the faithful Agrippa, succeeded in crossing the Adriatic, and the two hosts and fleets lay opposite one another on either shore of the Ambracian gulf. Octavius had not so many troops as Antonius, and only 150 small and light ships; but he was fighting for Rome against the barbarian East, and very soon Antonius' officers began to desert to him in crowds. At this Antonius lost heart; and not knowing whom to trust, yielded to the advice of Cleopatra to escape to Egypt with the fleet. On September 2nd there was a calm, and Agrippa put to sea and attacked him. Agrippa's fleet made up in quickness what they lacked in numbers and size; but the battle was still undecided when a breeze sprang up. Cleopatra hoisted her sails and made off, followed by Antonius and the Egyptian ships. The rest of the fleet made a gallant fight, but by the end of the day were all taken or destroyed. The army, abandoned by its general, surrendered. The great

contest for the sovereignty of the world was over, and had been won by Octavius more by the mistakes of his rival than by his own skill. The battle was called the battle of Actium, from a temple of Apollo of that name on the southern promontory of the Ambracian Gulf.

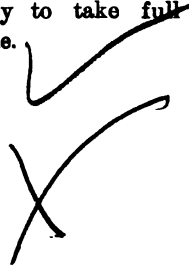
### **Death of Antonius and Cleopatra, B.C. 30.—**

Antonius and Cleopatra reached Egypt, and prepared for resistance; but Antonius felt that all was over. At times he gave way to moodiness and despair, and would not see her; then again he tried to drown his mortification in her society. For a time Octavius came not. He was occupied in receiving the submission of the different countries of the East and in revisiting Italy, where he was welcomed with acclamation.

At last, after eleven months, Octavius landed in Egypt. Antonius attempted to resist, but the Egyptian fleet deserted to Octavius. Cleopatra felt that her only hope was to subdue Octavius by her charms as she had subdued Antonius. She sent to him, asking for mercy; but the answer was that she must abandon Antonius. She then shut herself up in a building which she had erected for her tomb, called a mausoleum; and sent a message to Antonius, saying that she had died by her own hand. He at once stabbed himself; and when Cleopatra heard of it she sent for him. Her dying lover was conveyed to her chamber in the mausoleum, and breathed his last in her arms. Then Octavius came to her; but her fascinations

were powerless over him, and she found out that his purpose was to keep her alive and exhibit her in his triumph. So she resolved to die. All means of death were carefully kept from the mausoleum. One morning it was found that she had peacefully expired; and the story was that she slew herself by the bite of an asp which had been brought to her in a basket of figs. She was given a royal funeral, and her body was laid beside Antonius. She was the last queen of Egypt.

The story of Antonius and Cleopatra is one of the most famous of antiquity, and has been made immortal by the pen of Shakespeare. When we read it we cannot doubt that it was his love for her that ruined Antonius. It turned the Romans from him and sapped all his energies. Originally he was a brave and able soldier, trained in the wars of Julius Cæsar, a skilful though unscrupulous statesman; but from the time he met Cleopatra on the river Cydnus, he was a changed man, and had no chance against his cool and wary opponent, ready to take full advantage of every mistake he made.



X

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### AUGUSTUS.

	B.C.
Octavius returns to Rome, . . . . .	29
He assumes the title of Augustus, . . . . .	27
Recovery of the Standards of Crassus, . . . . .	20
	A.D.
Augustus adopts Tiberius as his heir and successor, . . . . .	4
Defeat of Varus by the Germans, . . . . .	9
Death of Augustus, . . . . .	14

**Return of Octavius to Italy, B.C. 29.**— In the summer of B.C. 29 Octavius returned to Rome, bringing back peace and security, which seemed to have fled from the world for ever. The temple of Janus was closed for the second time since the reign of Numa Pompilius. There was no vengeance on the vanquished, no proscriptions; the civil wars, with all their evils, were over. Fifteen years before, he had come to Italy, a mere boy, to claim his inheritance. The odds had seemed all against him. His uncle had just been murdered; able and unscrupulous rivals confronted him; and he was no soldier. He had worked patiently and coolly. One by one he had



overcome all dangers ; and now, at the age of thirty-four, he was again coming to Italy, having won his inheritance, master of the Roman world.

**The Final Establishment of the Empire at Rome.**—It is from this year that the beginning of the empire at Rome is generally dated. Julius Cæsar, indeed, was the first to bear the title of emperor, but his rule was shortlived, and he reigned as the champion of the Popular Party against the Senate. Octavius reigned as the champion of no party, but of peace and order ; all men felt that his rule was the only thing that could save them from the frightful troubles and bloodshed of the past years : so mildly and justly did he wield his power, and so great was the peace and prosperity under it, that after his death, even in the times of the worst emperors, no one seriously dreamt of returning to the republic. It was plain that the only possible government of the state was the rule of an emperor.

It must not be thought, however, that there was any great change apparent in the government at Rome at this time. Octavius himself had been ruling supreme in Italy for the last ten years ; and before that, from the time that Sulla marched on Rome (B.C. 88), there had nearly always been some one man, Sulla, or Marius, or Cinna, or Pompeius, or Julius Cæsar, who was regarded as the head of the state. So things went on much as before ; but when Octavius died after many years of undisputed rule, and was able to hand on his power to a successor, then it

began to be felt that a new order of things was established, and the republic had passed away.



COIN OF OCTAVIUS.

**Octavius takes the Titles of Augustus and Princeps.**—The great difficulty on Octavius' return to Rome was what title to bestow upon him to represent his new position as master of the Roman world. He already held the title of imperator; he could not take the hated title of king, nor would he take that of dictator, for that had been the title of Julius Cæsar, and had been abolished at his death, and he feared that it might bring upon him the same fate. Finally, the Senate decided (B C. 27) to give him the perfectly new title of Augustus (the majestic or revered), by which he was henceforward called; his name now was Imperator Cæsar Augustus,\* and these three names were borne by most of the emperors after him; but the title of Augustus was never actually used by any of them. But the ordinary designation applied to Augustus, as he must now be called, was

\* On his adoption by Julius Cæsar his name became Caius Julius Cæsar Octavianus; but he soon came to be called simply Cæsar; the name Octavius has been retained in these pages to avoid confusion.

that of Princeps (chief citizen); a name which did not offend the feelings of the Romans and was therefore highly valued by him. There was also some difficulty about his precise powers. He was now triumvir, consul and tribune, the office of triumvir he resigned at once, and in its place the Senate conferred on him supreme military power for ten years, which was afterwards from time to time renewed. In B.C. 23 he resigned the consulship, and was given rights and authority equal to those of a consul: the tribuneship he held for the rest of his life; and when Lepidus died he assumed the office of Pontifex Maximus. Thus the whole government was in his hands.

### **The Senate, People, and Consulship.—**

Augustus treated the Senate with great respect; to increase its authority, he turned out all the provincials and freedmen enrolled in it by Julius Cæsar. It no longer governed, but advised the emperor, as in early days it had advised the kings. So its days of misgovernment were forgotten, and it regained its old dignity as the assembly of the noblest men of Rome, with the emperor at its head. The Assemblies still met as a matter of form, and continued to do so for many years; but they gradually lost all power of making laws, and at elections a list of the candidates to be elected was arranged and drawn up by the emperor and the Senate. The emperor also took to himself the right of hearing appeals which had belonged to the people (see page

15). You will remember how St. Paul before Festus declared, "I appeal unto Cæsar," and was sent to Rome for his appeal to be heard. There was now no Popular Party to create disorder at Rome, but the mob still required to be kept in good humour: it only wanted two things, said a Roman Poet, cheap corn and the gladiatorial shows in the circus (*panem et circenses*).

Most of the old republican offices, such as the consulship, were kept, but only for their dignity, not for their power. The posts which were really coveted by the able and ambitious were the governorships of provinces and the commands in the armies on the frontiers; there they had unlimited scope for their energies, and ruled almost with as much power as the emperor at home. There was only one check on them; they were liable to be punished by the emperor for misgovernment.

**The Provinces under the Empire.**—If the empire proved a blessing to Rome and Italy, it proved still more a blessing to the provinces. You have heard how they suffered during the later years of the republic from cruel and rapacious governors. Under the empire all this was changed: the governors were afraid of the powerful emperor, who was over them all, and would have no reason for pardoning their exactions. You will remember how afraid Pontius Pilate was of the Jews complaining to Tiberius of some wicked acts which he had done at the beginning of his governorship: and the Jews did after all complain, and Tiberius punished him by banishment. Besides, the

governors had not the same reason for being oppressive; they did not have to please the people by expensive shows to gain their elections, since now the Emperor really appointed them. So even in the reigns of the cruel emperors, which you will hear about, like Caligula, Nero, and Domitian, it was only the city of Rome that suffered from their cruelty, the provinces were well governed as usual. And so from the beginning of the empire till the end was drawing near the provinces were peaceful and contented; trade flourished and multiplied, merchantmen sailed securely to and fro over the Mediterranean; splendid cities, like Antioch and Alexandria, grew and flourished, rivalling almost Rome in size and grandeur. The frontiers were guarded by a mighty army of over forty legions—more than 300,000 men; within there was peace, the *Pax Romana*, or Roman peace, as it was called, such a peace as the English maintain among the various races of India.

This great empire, now under the rule of a single man, consisted of all Europe west of the Rhine, except the British Isles (which you will hear about later), and south of the Danube; Asia Minor and Syria as far as the Euphrates, with Egypt and most of the northern coast of Africa. So vast did the empire seem to Augustus that in his will he charged his successors not to enlarge it; and the only important additions to it after his death were Britain, and some conquests of the great Emperor Trajan, which, however, were abandoned by his successor.

15.5.24  
**Augustus as Emperor.**—Augustus ruled from B.C. 29 to A.D. 14, forty-three years. Secure in the possession of his vast power, and not wishing to offend the feelings of the Romans, he lived as far as possible the life of a simple citizen; his dress was that of an ordinary senator, and when he appeared in the streets there was no royal pomp or show. He was courteous to his friends, visiting their houses and entertaining them at his, and in the pleasures of the table indulged but moderately, as a protest against the luxury and extravagance of the age. Yet for all his simplicity of life Augustus was openly regarded as a god. He was worshipped and sacrifices were made to him in the provinces, and even in Italy, though there it was forbidden by law; and when an emperor died, he was supposed to have become a god, and so the Latin for the “late” emperor was *divus* (divine), and Augustus himself talked of Julius Cæsar as Divus Julius.



COIN REPRESENTING A TEMPLE IN HONOUR OF AN EMPEROR.

Augustus in the early years of his reign was not often at Rome; he made progresses through the provinces, setting their government in order, and at times put himself at the head of his legions in frontier wars, till the ill-health from which he suffered all his life forced him to give up active warfare. On one

occasion he purposely left the city, pretending that he was about to retire, in order to show that the government could not go on without him, and the Senate very soon was obliged to entreat him to come back.

**The Augustan Age of Literature.**—At no other time of Rome's history was there such a number of great poets and writers as during the reign of Augustus—the Augustan age of literature, as it was called. There were great writers indeed in the later days of the republic, when Cicero composed his speeches and wrote books about philosophy, and Julius Cæsar himself wrote an account of his wars. And there were poets, too, then: Lucretius, who wrote a great poem about the origin of our world, and Catullus, who wrote mostly love songs. But Augustus, with his friend and minister Mæcenas, specially encouraged authors; and the end of the civil wars and troubles seem to have turned men's minds more to writing. There was the great Roman historian Livy (T. Livius Patavinus B.C. 59 to A.D. 17), who wrote the history of Rome from the beginning, though a good deal is lost; Virgil (P. Vergilius Maro, B.C. 70 to 19), whose great work, the *Æneid*, the greatest poem after Homer, tells us the story of *Æneās*, and is really a glorification of Rome and Augustus. Many Roman poets in after ages copied Virgil, but none could equal him. Then came Ovid (P. Ovidius Naso, B.C. 43 to A.D. 18), who wrote poems of all sorts, especially about love, and was banished for some unknown reason by Augustus; and Horace (Q. Horatius

Flaccus, B.C. 65 to 8), who fought under Brutus and Cassius at Philippi, the special friend of Mæcenæ; his poems were about the life at Rome, odes addressed to his friends and especially to Augustus, and love songs.

All through their poems run two ideas (1) the greatness of Augustus, the restorer of peace and conqueror of barbarians, whom, with what seems to us abject flattery, they address as a god, a Jupiter on earth; and (2) the greatness of Rome, the ruler of the world.

**Augustus' Difficulty about a Successor—Tiberius.**—The great trouble of Augustus' life was the choice of a successor. Livia an able and accomplished woman, whom he married B.C. 38, and who made him a devoted wife, bore him no children. By a former wife, Scribonia, he had one daughter, Julia. Livia had two sons, Tiberius and Drusus, by a previous husband, Tiberius Claudius Nero, a descendant of the Nero who won the battle of Metaurus, and she wished the emperor to adopt Tiberius. Augustus gave them high commands in the army, but as his successor he fixed upon his nephew Marcellus, son of his high-minded and unfortunate sister Octavia (see page 297). Marcellus was married to Julia, but, to the great grief of Augustus and of the whole people, with whom he was an universal favourite, he died in his first manhood (B.C. 23). Then the emperor married his great general, Agrippa, to Julia. On his death (B.C. 12) he forced Tiberius to divorce his existing wife and marry Julia, but still would not adopt him,



## THE DESCENDANTS OF AUGUSTUS.

Augustus = (1) Scribonia.

Julia = (1) Marcellus.  
           (2) Agrippa.  
           (8) Tiberius.

Augustus = (2) Livia = (1) Tiberius Claudius Nero

Vipsania (1) = Tiberius = (2) Julia.

Drusus.

Drusus.

Germanicus.

(2) Claudius = (1) Messalina.

Caius (Caligula) Domitius (1) = Agrippina

Nero

Octavia.

Britannicus.

*des* *des* *but*

The marriage was hateful to Tiberius, for he dearly loved his first wife, and Julia was a wicked, profligate woman, and everyone but her father knew it. At last, so keenly did he feel the slight put upon him, that he went away to Rhodes (B.C. 6), leaving Julia at Rome. During his absence, her infamy at last reached the ears of the old emperor. It was a terrible blow to him, but he punished her by banishment for life (B.C. 2). Soon afterwards (A.D. 2) he summoned Tiberius back from Rhodes, and two years afterwards formally adopted him. Thus Livia's wish was accomplished; but Tiberius never recovered from the long years of neglect and his unhappy marriage: his mind was irretrievably soured. His brother Drusus had died long before (B.C. 9) from a fall from his horse, and left two sons, Germanicus and Claudius, afterwards emperor; and Tiberius, though he had a son, also called Drusus, was now required by Augustus to adopt Germanicus.

**The Wars of Augustus—Recovery of the Standards of Crassus, B.C. 20.**—The temple of Janus did not long remain closed at Rome. The armies on the frontiers under Agrippa, and after his death under Tiberius and his brother Drusus, had plenty of work. The great glory of his reign was the recovery of the Roman standards captured from Crassus at the battle of Carrhæ (B.C. 53). The Parthians submitted without a struggle (B.C. 20); and thus Augustus had the honour of wiping out the disgrace on the Roman arms, a task which Antonius had failed

to accomplish. Then there were fierce wars against the tribes of the Alps, and also against the Dalmatians and Pannonians, barbarian tribes dwelling on the coast of the Adriatic and as far north as the Danube. They rebelled again and again, but were finally subdued by Tiberius (A.D. 9).

**The Invasion of Germany—Defeat of Varus, A.D. 9.**—The hardest wars of all were against the Germans. You will remember that Julius Cæsar had twice crossed the Rhine for a few days. But now that Gaul was thoroughly peaceful, it was determined to extend the Roman arms over Germany. Drusus, and after his death Tiberius, conducted the war. They were both skilful generals, and won many victories; but they could make no lasting conquests beyond the Rhine, for the Germans were brave, and the country, with its marshes and forests, very difficult. At last a terrible disaster befell the Romans. Tiberius was far away, engaged in the Pannonian war. The Germans rallied round a national leader named Arminius, and surprised a Roman force of three legions, under Quintilius Varus, in a dense forest, and utterly destroyed it (A.D. 9). It was the greatest defeat since Carrhæ, and was a sad blow to the poor old-emperor, who is said to have often started in his sleep at night, crying out, "Varus, give me back my legions". Tiberius, luckily, had just ended the Pannonian war. He hurried to Gaul with his nephew, the young Germanicus, and restored the prowess of the Roman arms; but ever after the

Rhine remained the boundary of the Roman empire. The country on the Rhine was made into two provinces called Upper and Lower Germania, and towns founded which are still famous German towns.

**Death of Augustus, A.D. 14.**—Five years after the defeat of Varus, Augustus, at the age of seventy-seven, peacefully expired in the arms of his devoted consort Livia, with Tiberius at his side. "Have I played my part well?" were his last words to his friends assembled round his deathbed. And we cannot but answer, "Yes". He saw that the only way to heal the ills of the troubled state was to carry out the work begun by Julius; and so he carried it out, and by so doing founded one of the longest-lived governments that the world has ever seen. Whatever we may think of his proscriptions and of some of his acts at the beginning of his career, we must remember that he was but a youth struggling with difficulties that seemed overwhelming; and when once he had attained power his conduct was free from reproach. The Romans hated the very name of king, but he made them content under an emperor; they prided themselves on their warlike glory, but he made them lovers of peace.



COIN OF AUGUSTUS.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### *THE EARLY EMPIRE.*

	A.D.
Tiberius, . . . . .	14-37
Caligula, . . . . .	37-41
<u>Claudius</u> , . . . . .	41-54
Nero, . . . . .	54-68
Galba, . . . . .	68-69
Otho, . . . . .	69
Vitellius, . . . . .	69
Vespasian, . . . . .	69-79
Titus, . . . . .	79-81
Domitian, . . . . .	81-96

**Tiberius, A.D. 14-37—The Early Years of his Reign—Germanicus.**—At last, after many years of neglect and disappointment, Tiberius found himself Emperor of Rome at the age of fifty-six. He was the best general of his age, and well trained in the art of government; and during the first years of his reign he ruled admirably, attending so closely to all the details of government that he hardly ever left Rome. But his mind had been permanently soured by his treatment by Augustus, so that he was never popular, and he could not help being jealous of his nephew Germanicus, whom he knew the people greatly loved

and wished to have as emperor. Germanicus was commanding the legions on the Rhine, where he won great glory by recapturing the standards of Varus ; and the legions were eager to proclaim him emperor, but he was loyal to Tiberius, and would not kindle the flames of civil war. Tiberius then sent him to the East, where he died, A.D. 19 ; and many said that he was poisoned. He left many children, of whom you need only remember a son, Caius, and a daughter, Agrippina. Caius had passed his first years in the camp of the German army ; he was the pet of the rough soldiers, who called him Caligula (from *caliga*, a soldier's boot).

**Tiberius goes to Capreæ—Sejanus.**—In the middle of his reign two terrible blows fell upon Tiberius, which increased his melancholy into what was nothing else than madness. Firstly, in A.D. 23, his only son Drusus died ; Tiberius tried to console himself by working, if possible, harder than before, but the strain was too great, and, in A.D. 26, he went away from Rome to the beautiful island of Capreæ, in the Bay of Naples, leaving the government of Rome in the hands of his only friend, Sejanus, a man of low birth whom he had raised to the post of commander of the Prætorian Guards, a force of 10,000 men kept at Rome as a body guard for the emperor. Secondly, while at Capreæ, he received proofs that Sejanus had all the time been plotting to make himself emperor, and that Drusus had not died a natural death, as was imagined, but had been poisoned

by him. Utterly prostrated by the discovery, Tiberius wrote a long letter to the Senate, which showed the depth of his misery. "If I know what to write to you on this occasion, Senators," it began, "or how to write, or what not to write, may all the gods and goddesses destroy me worse than I feel I am daily being destroyed." The letter ended by ordering the Senate to put Sejanus to death. The order was at once carried out, for Sejanus was universally hated; in a single day he passed from the height of power to a traitor's doom (A.D. 31).

### **The Informers—Latter Years of Tiberius.—**

But henceforth Tiberius suspected everybody, and the nobles at Rome lived in daily dread of sharing the fate of Sejanus. In the early years of Tiberius a law had been passed making it "treason" not only to plot against the life of the emperor, but even to speak or write disrespectfully of him. And so there had sprung up at Rome a class of men called informers (*delatores*), who made it their business to bring charges against men for crimes of treason. At first Tiberius had kept the informers in check, but now he readily listened to them. Many men of noble birth suffered death, or were compelled to commit suicide, and, as in the days of the proscriptions, groundless charges were often brought against men simply for their wealth, for the informers were rewarded by part of the property of their victims. Till the end of the century these informers were the curse of Rome.

During this reign of terror Tiberius lingered on at

Capreæ. Once he tried to return to Rome; but when his ship was ascending the Tiber, his feelings were too strong for him; he could not face his life of unpopularity there; he turned back once more to Capreæ. There, according to the Roman stories, he tried to overcome his misery by indulging in the most horrible vice and cruelty, but most of the stories, we may hope, are false. Everyone longed for his death and the accession of his great-nephew, young Caius, whom he had adopted as his successor. It came at last (A.D. 37): but it was whispered at Rome that it was hastened by Caius, who at the suggestion of an officer smothered the old emperor with a pillow as he lay dying.

**Caligula, A.D. 37-41.**—Caius, or Caligula, as he is generally called by historians, young, handsome, and popular, gave promise of an excellent reign. He put down the informers for a time, and did many other just and wise things. But his high position overthrew his reason too. He had a severe illness which threatened his life, and recovered from it a madman. He now revelled in the wildest extravagance and cruelty, putting to death his best friends; and it was even worse than the days of Tiberius. In A.D. 40, after crushing a rebellion on the Rhine, he prepared to invade Britain, which had never been molested since Julius Cæsar's landing, 100 years before. He reviewed his army on the coast of Gaul; all was ready for the embarkation, when suddenly the



emperor ordered the soldiers to pick up the shells on the beach. He then returned to Rome, sending the shells to the Senate as the spoils of the ocean. His mad freaks were wilder than ever : once he declared that he would have his horse elected consul ; he nearly drove the Jews to rebellion by ordering his statue to be set up in the Temple. At last his conduct became unbearable ; two tribunes of the prætorians, in revenge for a stupid insult, got together a number of soldiers and murdered him (A.D. 41).

Claudius, A.D. 41-54.—In the imperial palace, after the murder, all was terror and confusion, when some prætorians, roaming about, suddenly came upon the emperor's uncle Claudius, hidden behind a curtain, trembling with fear. Claudius, though he had some literary talent, had always been despised as a poor, spiritless creature, unfit for public life. The soldiers, seeing him, saluted him more in jest than earnest as emperor. The news soon spread. He was proclaimed emperor in the prætorian camp, and the Senate dared not oppose him.

So the despised Claudius became emperor, and showed his true character by trying to govern conscientiously and well. He carried out Caligula's plan of invading Britain ; the island was conquered, and became a Roman province (A.D. 43). Caractacus (Caradoc), a brave British prince, rebelled (A.D. 47) : he was conquered and brought to Rome. There he had an interview with the emperor ; the barbarian was astonished at the magnificence of Rome. "Why," said

he, "since you have such a splendid city and buildings, do you covet my poor country?" Pleased with his frankness, the emperor, contrary to the usual Roman practice, spared his captive's life.

Claudius was an easy-going, unsuspicious man; he was ruled by two favourites, Greek freedmen, and his wife Messalina. She was a wicked woman, and at last one of the freedmen, jealous of her power, told the emperor of her conduct, and she was put to death. She left two children, Britannicus and Octavia. Then Claudius married his niece Agrippina (see page 315), who determined that her own son by a previous husband, a boy of twelve named Domitius, should succeed him. She induced the emperor to adopt him by the name of Nero Claudius, and to marry him at the age of sixteen to Octavia. The next year Claudius died, poisoned, rumour said, by Agrippina. By pre-arrangement Nero was hailed emperor by the prætorians, and was accepted by the Senate.

✓ **Nero, A.D. 54-68.**—Agrippina had thus succeeded in her ambitious designs; she now hoped to hold the reins of power, as mother of the young emperor. But she was disappointed. Nero's tutor, the wise and good philosopher Seneca, and Burrhus, the captain of the prætorians, kept the power in their own hands, and Nero and his mother quarrelled. For five years, under the influence of Seneca and Burrhus, Nero ruled well, and these five years were afterwards looked back to as the best period of the early empire; but as he grew older, his true nature showed itself more and

more till he became a monster of wickedness, folly, and cruelty, a byword of history.

Even at the beginning of his reign he poisoned his half-brother, the unhappy boy Britannicus ; next he determined to get rid of his mother, who was now his bitterest enemy : he sent her to sea in a ship so constructed that it suddenly fell to pieces, and, when she managed to escape, had her murdered. He divorced Octavia to marry Poppæa Sabina, the wickedest woman in Rome, whose husband was living, and afterwards kicked her in a passion so that she died. His cruelty and avarice vented itself on the wealthiest nobles, whom he slew or banished on various pretences that he might seize their possessions. His wild luxury and undisguised depravity appalled even the profligate Romans ; and he further outraged their dignity by exhibiting the spectacle of a Roman emperor joining in the games of the circus and contending for prizes with foreign singers and musicians.

It was in his reign that the Christians, who had now become a considerable sect, suffered their first terrible persecution. A great fire raged in Rome for six days in the year A.D. 64, and many affirmed that it was the emperor's work. To divert suspicion he declared that the Christians had caused it, and had numbers put to death : he is said to have illuminated his gardens by fixing unhappy victims to stakes, covering them with pitch, and then setting them alight.

But his end was approaching. First a conspiracy was formed against him at Rome, but that was discovered.

Among those who paid for their rashness with their lives was his old tutor Seneca (A.D. 65). Then the army turned against him. Galba, the general in Spain, was proclaimed emperor by his army, and marched to Italy. Nero found himself without a friend. Senate, prætorians, people, all were against him. Overcome by terror, he fled from Rome; the Senate ordered him to be seized and put to death, but with the aid of a slave he slew himself just in time. He left no children, and with him the line of Julius Cæsar came to an end.



COIN OF NERO.

**Civil War—Four Emperors in Eighteen Months, A.D. 68-69.** — Galba, an old man of seventy of too peaceful and honest a character for a usurper, was not the man to rouse the enthusiasm of soldiers or people. He had not been in Rome a fortnight when Otho, the first husband of Nero's wife Poppæa, persuaded the prætorians to mutiny. Galba was slain, and Otho became emperor, January, A.D. 69. Then the legions on the Rhine proclaimed their general Vitellius emperor, marched into Italy and defeated the army of Otho at Bedriacum a little north of the Padus. Otho killed himself, and Vitellius,

coarse fat man, whose chief pleasure was eating, was emperor. But the legions in Syria in their turn proclaimed Vespasian (T. Flavius Vespasianus) as Cæsar. A second battle of Bedriacum was fought, and the Vitellians were defeated; then followed some frightful street fighting in Rome, in the course of which the Capitol was burnt. The Vitellians were slain to a man, and Vitellius himself was brutally dragged through the streets and put to death.

**The Siege of Jerusalem, A.D. 70.**—Vespasian was at the time engaged in conquering the Jews, who were trying to throw off the hated yoke of the Gentiles. He left in the East his son Titus, a brave and noble soldier, to complete the conquest. At the time of the Passover, when Jerusalem was crowded with worshippers from all parts of Palestine, Titus advanced to the siege and completely surrounded the city. Famine soon began its deadly work; the strife of factions prevailed, and the party of the priests was overborne by the fierce sect of fanatics called Zealots, who then began to quarrel among themselves. But still Jerusalem, like Carthage in her death struggle, stubbornly held out. Slowly but surely, though with awful losses, the legions stormed defence after defence. Then the Temple was taken and burnt. Still the Jews would not yield, in spite of all the offers of Titus. At last, after terrible fighting, the city itself was stormed: the miserable remnant of its defenders were sold into slavery, but over a million are said to have perished in the siege. The rest of the

Jews were driven from Jerusalem and scattered over Europe, and to this day have never again become a nation. In commemoration of this siege a triumphal arch was built at Rome, known as the arch of Titus, and is still to be seen there.

**The Flavian House—Vespasian, A.D. 69-79—Titus, A.D. 79-81.**—~~Titus, on his~~ return to Rome, was welcomed by his father and given a share in the government. Vespasian was a simple honest soldier; he had served with distinction in Britain and the East; he had never stooped to flatter Nero, and is said to have offended him and been in danger of his life by going to sleep when he was singing. As emperor he ruled wisely and strongly, and, like Augustus, set an example of simple living which did much to check the luxury of the nobles at Rome. He rebuilt the Capitol and began the amphitheatre known as the Colossæum, the mighty ruins of which still stand. He died A.D. 79, after a reign of ten years, aged seventy; and Titus, who succeeded, "the delight of the human race," as the Romans called him, only survived him two years, dying, to the great grief of all, A.D. 81.

The first year of Titus' reign is famous for the great eruption of Vesuvius. As the mountain was not known to be a volcano, two towns, Herculaneum and Pompeii had, in early ages, been founded at its foot, and were now overwhelmed by the streams of molten lava and showers of hot ashes. Excavations have recently been made, and the buildings have been

found wonderfully preserved with their contents, and give us a vivid picture of a Roman town and Roman life eighteen centuries ago.

**Domitian, A.D. 81-96.**—Titus was succeeded by his younger brother Domitian (T. Flavius Domitianus). Unversed in war, and corrupted in mind by his high position, he was a great contrast to his father and brother, who knew his character, and allowed him no share in the government. He was cruel and suspicious and put to death many nobles, so that his reign was more like Nero's than that of any other emperor. After reigning fifteen



COIN OF VESPASIAN

years he was murdered by one of his own household. His reign is chiefly memorable for the great victories of his general Agricola in Britain, who conquered the country right up to the Highlands of Scotland. Agricola was the first to sail round the country and discover it to be an island. He greatly civilised Britain by his government, but was recalled by Domitian from jealousy. With Domitian the Flavian house came to an end. 2



## CHAPTER XXXI.

### *THE LATER EMPIRE.*

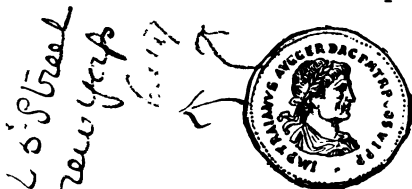
	A.D.
Nerva, . . . . .	96
Trajan, . . . . .	98
Hadrian, . . . . .	117
Antoninus Pius, . . . . .	138
Marcus Aurelius, . . . . .	161
Commodus, . . . . .	180-192
Septimius Severus, . . . . .	193-211
Decius—killed by the Goths, . . . . .	249-251
Valerian—captured by the Persians, . . . . .	253-260
Aurelian—defeated the Goths, . . . . .	270-275
Diocletian—remodelled the empire, . . . . .	284-306
Constantine the Great—First Christian emperor	
—founded Constantinople, . . . . .	323-337
Julian the Apostate, . . . . .	361-363
Valentinian—divided the empire, . . . . .	364-375

**Change in the Character of the Roman Emperors.**—When you read this account of the early Roman empire, you will probably think that nearly all Roman emperors were bad and profligate men, who only used their high position to indulge in wickedness and cruelty; and you will wonder that the Romans endured such rulers. You have been already told that their crimes only affected the nobles at Rome.

and that the rest of the empire was prosperous and well-governed. But by this time the Romans really seem to have grown tired of the Neros and Domitians, and to have felt that the post of emperor was a most responsible one, and that its holder should be really worthy of it. And so you will now read about a succession of great and good emperors, mighty soldiers, or wise statesmen, who thought of nothing but the great and difficult task of ruling the vast dominions entrusted to their care.

✓ **Nerva (A.D. 96-98)—Trajan (A.D. 98-117)—Hadrian (A.D. 117-138).**—There was no one to succeed Domitian, so the Senate elected an old man named Nerva. Nerva only reigned sixteen months (A.D. 96-98), but he did much good, especially by putting a stop to the informers. Before his death he adopted as his successor an able soldier named Trajan (A.D. 98-117), a Spaniard by birth, who was in command of the legions on the Rhine. So good a ruler was he that "more fortunate than Augustus, and better than Trajan," was the highest wish that could be expressed for a Roman emperor. Trajan is famous as the only emperor after Claudius who extended the frontiers of the empire. He crossed the lower Danube and conquered the barbarian tribes on its northern bank called Dacians; and to commemorate the triumph he set up a column at Rome called Trajan's Column. But his successor Hadrian (A.D. 117-138), also a great soldier, thought it wiser to give up the conquests, and restored the old frontiers. Hadrian made a tour through all the

provinces of the empire, setting everything in order. He visited Britain, where he built a wall from the Tyne to the Solway Firth, to keep out the savage Caledonians of Scotland. Both Hadrian and Trajan erected many magnificent buildings at Rome and in the provinces. Trajan is celebrated as the greatest builder of all the Roman emperors.



COIN OF TRAJAN.

**The Age of the Antonines, A.D. 138-180—  
The Barbarians threaten the Frontiers.**—Hadrian left as his adopted successor Titus Aurelius Antoninus, usually known as Antoninus Pius, a wise and good citizen, fifty years of age (A.D. 138-161). Antoninus Pius and his adopted successor, Marcus Aurelius, whom he admitted to share the government were the best sovereigns that ever sat on any throne, and the noblest men that Paganism ever produced. They were philosophers; they belonged to the famous sect called Stoics, who held that true happiness consists in an upright life, and in their government and private life they tried to do what was right and just and best for the welfare of their subjects. The age of the

Antonines is famous as the golden age of the Roman empire. Rarely in all the history of the world has there been such a period of peace and just government. Within those vast frontiers all was tranquil and prosperous. Beyond the frontiers there was, indeed, fighting from time to time with the Germans and other barbarian tribes of Central Europe ; and in the reign of Marcus Aurelius their attacks had become so formidable that men already began to see looming in a distance the danger which was destined in the end to overthrow the empire.

Marcus Aurelius was obliged to give up his peaceful life of government and philosophy, and take the field against the barbarians. After many arduous campaigns, he beat the invaders back ; but in the year A.D. 180 he perished of fever near the Danube. He was succeeded by his unworthy son, Commôdus, whose rule recalled the days of Nero and Domitian. He was assassinated after twelve years, A.D. 192.

**Confusion in the Empire.**—With the death of Marcus Aurelius the golden age came to an end, and was followed by a century of war and trouble. The barbarians renewed their attacks more fiercely than ever. The Romans themselves no longer fought in the armies ; the legions on the frontiers had long been recruited from Gauls, Germans, and other barbarian subjects, and were very different from the legions of Cæsar and Augustus. Emperors, many of them provincials, were raised to the throne by the armies on the frontiers, or by the Prætorians at Rome. The latter,

on the death of Commodus, openly sold the empire to the highest bidder, a senator named Julianus. The price he paid was £2,400,000, and he only reigned three months. Some of these emperors were wretched creatures, utterly unworthy of sitting in the seat of Antonines or Augustus, such as Elagabalus, a priest of the sun god from the East, a monster of cruelty and wickedness. Others were great generals. Septimius Sev̄rus (A.D. 193-211), made emperor by the army of the Danube, put an end to the power of the Prætorians. He fought many wars, some against the barbarians, others against rivals, and died in Britain, at Eborācum (York). Decius (A.D. 249-251) was a brave soldier, a true Roman of the family to which Decius Mus, the hero of Mount Vesuvius, belonged (see page 76).

**Invasion of the Goths—The Empire saved—Aurelian, A.D. 270-275.**—Decius fell fighting against the Goths, barbarians from the north of Germany, who now began to press southward across the Danube, and, finally, after many years, played a great part in the fall of the Empire. Other German barbarians were pouring across the Rhine, and the Persians were threatening the east. So great was the danger that Valerian (A.D. 253-260) divided the empire and made his brother emperor in the west. Valerian was defeated and captured by the Persian king Sapor, and died in shameful captivity; Sapor, it is said, used him as a foot-stool in mounting his horse. His brother was a feeble ruler, and rival emperors arose. At last

a great emperor, Aurelian (A.D. 270-275), an Illyrian soldier, drove back the Goths over the Danube and the other Germans over the Rhine, and crushed all his rivals. But so much did he fear for the safety of Rome that he built massive fortifications round the city, which had now far outgrown the wall of Servius Tullius.



COIN OF AURELIAN.

**Diocletian remodels the Government and divides the Empire (A.D. 284-305).**—The empire was now secure again for a time, but it was fast becoming less and less Roman. A brave Dalmatian soldier, named Diocletian, who became emperor, made great changes. The government was entirely remodelled, and all the old Republican customs abolished. Diocletian was no longer the chief magistrate of a republic like Augustus: he wore a royal diadem, and reigned, like the old Persians, surrounded with all the pomp and splendour of an eastern court.

The Senate lost all power over the provinces, but it was still left to rule at Rome, for Rome itself was ceasing to be the capital of the empire. It was little more than the chief town of Italy. The emperor

rarely came there. He preferred to live in one of the great provincial cities, whence he could watch the barbarians over the frontier. Like Valerian he divided the Empire, taking himself the east; but he also made two inferior emperors, whom he called Cæsars, reserving the title of Augustus for himself and his chief colleague. But the strangest act of Diocletian was his abdication. All other emperors ruled till their death; but he, when he thought that his work was done, voluntarily retired, and spent the last nine years of his life in tranquil enjoyment. His chief amusement was gardening.



COIN OF DIOCLETIAN.

**Constantine the Great, the first Christian Emperor, A.D. 323-337.**—The division of the empire led, as you might expect, to civil wars between the different rulers. There were many terrible battles; and at last, A.D. 323, Constantine, the son of one of Diocletian's colleagues, came from Britain and won a great victory at the Milvian Bridge over the Tiber, five miles from Rome, and became sole emperor. He was a great soldier, and kept the barbarians at bay.

There are two facts you must remember about Constantine.

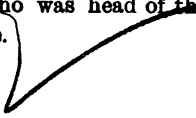
**Firstly**, he was the first emperor to become a Christian. During all these three hundred years the Christians had been steadily growing in numbers, in spite of cruel persecutions. Many of the best emperors, even Marcus Aurelius, thought it right to persecute them, and throw them to the lions in the amphitheatre for the amusement of the Roman populace. By this time they were very numerous, and some people say that Constantine thought it would help him in his fight for the empire to become a Christian; but the story is that, when he was marching from Gaul, a bright light suddenly appeared in the sky, and he beheld a cross, and on the cross the words: "In this conquer". Thereupon he became a Christian, and evermore he had a sacred standard carried at the head of his army, called the "labārum".

**He founds Constantinople.**—**Secondly**, Constantine made a new capital of the empire at Byzantium, an old Greek town on the Bosphorus, because he thought the east the more important part of the empire, for there the barbarian foes were strongest. He enlarged the town and built new walls, and called it after himself, Constantinopolis (the city of Constantine), or, as we still call it, Constantinople. And so, at last, Rome ceased to be the capital of the empire. The descendants of the old Romans still lived there, proud of their glorious name, but caring for nothing but the enjoyment of their luxury and wealth; they had



ceased to fight and govern, and the provincials whom they had once conquered were now becoming their masters.

**Julian the Apostate, A.D. 361-363.—Valentinian again divides the Empire A.D. 364-375.**—Constantine on his death left the empire divided among his four sons ; but they fought among themselves till one of them, Constantius, conquered the others and ruled alone (A.D. 353-361). He was succeeded by his cousin Julian, called Julian the Apostate, because, though he was brought up a Christian, he returned to paganism, and tried, when emperor, to restore the old religion. Julian was a good, though misguided, man, and a brave soldier. He was killed fighting victoriously in Persia, and Christianity finally triumphed. Soon after his death a soldier named Valentinian was made emperor. He divided the empire into two divisions, and gave the East to his brother Valens ; and from this time there were usually two emperors, an eastern one whose capital was Constantinople, and a western one who resided usually at Milan in the north of Italy, not at Rome. At this time the greatest man at Rome was the bishop, who was head of the Church, and was called the Pope.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

### *THE END OF THE EMPIRE.*

	A.D.
Valens defeated and slain by the Goths, . . .	378
Theodosius emperor of the East and West—He defeats the Goths, . . . . .	379-395
The empire divided for the last time, . . .	395
Stilicho drives Alaric the Goth out of Italy, .	402
Alaric takes Rome, . . . . .	410
The legions recalled from Britain, . . .	410
The Huns under Attila defeated at Chalons, .	451
The Vandals take Rome, . . . . .	454
Romulus Augustulus deposed, . . . . .	476
Charlemagne the first German Emperor, . .	800
Constantinople taken by the Turks—End of the Eastern Empire, . . . . .	1453

**The Huns enter Europe—The Goths cross the Danube.**—The Western empire was now struggling with the barbarians of Germany, the Franks, Vandals, and others. Many of them had crossed the frontiers and taken service in the Roman armies; and in the East the fierce Goths beyond the Danube had become Christians and lived peacefully; so the empire still held its ground. But about this time a new and terrible tribe of barbarians, ferocious Tartar horsemen called Huns, burst into Europe from the North of the Caspian Sea. Driven before these new foes, the Goths and other German

tribes were forced to wander westward. The Goths saved themselves by crossing the Danube and making new settlements on its southern bank, in the country which is now Bulgaria. They asked and obtained leave from Valens ; but soon disputes arose, a great battle was fought, and Valens was defeated and slain, A.D. 378.

**Theodosius saves the Empire—The Empire divided for the last time—Stilicho.**—Theodosius, a great general, the next emperor (A.D. 379-395), checked the Goths ; he induced them to submit, and enrolled them in his army. Then he turned his arms towards Italy, and overthrew an usurper named Maximus, who had seized the western empire ; so the whole empire was again united under a single strong government. Theodosius was a great Christian emperor, and crushed the last relics of Paganism. At his death the empire was divided for the last time, his successors being his two sons Honorius in the West and Arcadius in the East, both feeble rulers, unworthy of their great father. The defence of the empire was left to a brave Vandal named Stilicho. Arcadius was jealous of Stilicho, and allowed Aläric, now chief of the Goths, to attack Italy. Honorius fled from Milan (see page 334) to the strong fortress of Ravenna on the Adriatic, where he resided for the rest of his inglorious reign. But Stilicho beat Aläric and drove him out of Italy ; and then brought Honorius to Rome to celebrate a triumph, the last of the glorious list of Roman triumphs.

**Alaric takes Rome, A.D. 410—The Goths help the Empire.**—Stilicho next repulsed a horde of western barbarians who had invaded Italy. But he thought it advisable to make friends with Alaric; and Honorius put him to death for disloyalty (A.D. 408). Then Alaric came again; Stilicho's old soldiers joined him, and he demanded to be made general in Italy. Honorius, safe in his stronghold of Ravenna, refused; Alaric at last marched on Rome; and (A.D. 410) the mighty imperial city was taken, in spite of the walls of Aurelian, and pillaged for six days. Alaric soon after died, and the Goths, who still venerated the empire, took service under Honorius and won back for him Gaul and Spain. Britain had already been declared independent (A.D. 410), and Africa was soon afterwards conquered by the Vandals driven from Spain by the Goths.

**Invasion of the Huns.**—Thus with the help of the Goths the western empire still lived on. Soon a new danger threatened it. The savage Huns under a great king named Attila, known as the Scourge of God, invaded the west of Europe, and civilisation seemed in danger of utter destruction. But in a great battle in Gaul, near the modern town of Chalons (A.D. 451), the combined Roman and Gothic army was victorious. Attila, with the remains of his army, invaded Italy next year, and would have attacked Rome but for the interposition of the brave Pope Leo. Then Attila died; the Huns returned to the east, and disappear from history.

**The fall of the Western Empire, A.D. 476.**

—But in a few more years the end came. The Franks overran Gaul, and drove the Goths into Spain. The Vandals came in their ships from Africa, and pillaged Rome for fourteen days (A.D. 454); now-a-days “vandalism” has become a proverbial term for the wanton destruction of beautiful things. The line of Theodosius came to an end; emperors were set up by barbarian generals who now were really masters in Italy; the last emperor, Romulus Augustulus, a mere boy, was deposed by a general named Odoacer (A.D. 476). Thus the Western Empire quietly came to an end. Rome’s work as ruler of the world was over; but as the religious head of Western Europe, under the popes, the Eternal City still continued her career of greatness.

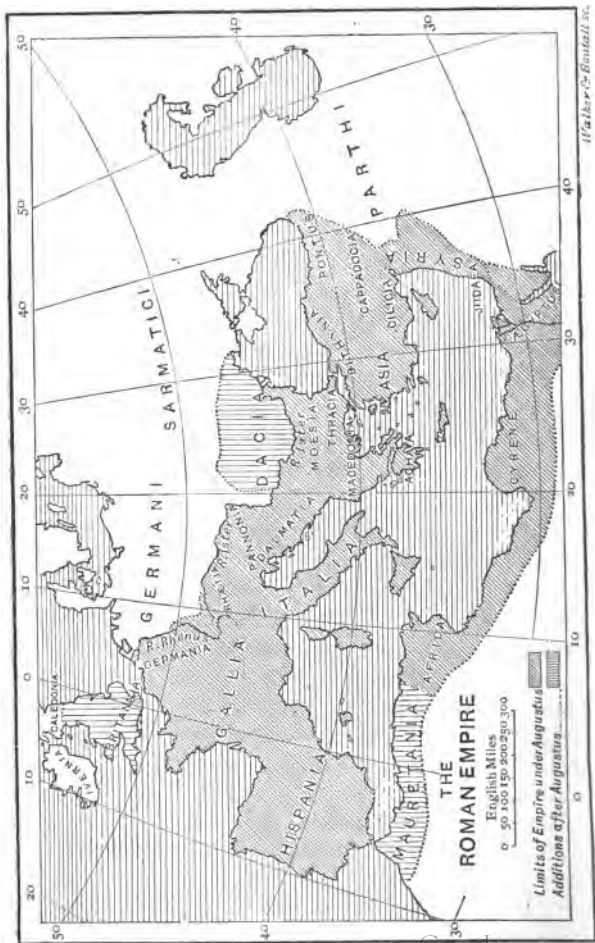
**The Holy Roman Empire—Modern Italy.—**

Though they overthrew the feeble Roman rulers, the barbarians still venerated the mighty title of Emperor. Many years after, on Christmas Day A.D. 800, Charles the Great, commonly known as Charlemagne, king of the Franks, who ruled over what is now France and Germany, was crowned emperor by the Pope. A new Empire now arose, called the Holy Roman Empire, but really a German Empire, which lasted 1000 years, and after many changes, was ended by Napoleon when he conquered the Austrians, A.D. 1806, and obliged the Emperor to change his title to that of Emperor of Austria; but it may be said to have been revived when, A.D. 1871, the victorious king of

Prussia was proclaimed at Versailles Emperor of the re-united German nation.

From the union of the barbarians with what remained of the old Roman and Italian stock arose the modern Italians. These new Italians did not form a single nation, but broke up into a number of independent cities and states. For many centuries Italy suffered from disunion and foreign oppression; but at last, in our own time, the new Italian nation was formed, and in A.D. 1870 Rome again became the capital of an united Italy.

**The Eastern Empire.**—The Eastern Empire hardly concerns us, for it was never really Roman. It lived another thousand years after the fall of Rome, struggling, often victoriously, with barbarian invaders; once it even drove the barbarians for a time out of Italy. It grew more and more Eastern in its character, and its territory dwindled more and more till, in A.D. 1453, Constantinople was taken by the Turks. Thus the Eastern Empire perished; but it too left behind it a relic, the Eastern, or as it is generally called, the Greek Church, the Church of Russia and the peoples of South East Europe, which still looks for the day when the Cross shall supplant the Crescent on the Dome of St. Sophia at Constantinople.



# APPENDIX.

## I.

### LIST OF MAGISTRATES UNDER THE REPUBLIC.

**Consuls, two :** Heads of the State and commanders of the army. Originally Patricians ; by Licinian Law, B.C. 367, both might be, and one was obliged to be, a Plebeian.

Required age, 43.

**Praetors :** one originally, increased with growth of Rome, Julius Cæsar made the number sixteen : judges, also commanded in the army and governed provinces. The office was created B.C. 367, to keep some of the consular power in the hands of the Patricians, but was soon thrown open to the Plebeians.

Required age, 40.

**Censors, two :** elected every five years from men who had already been consuls, to hold the census and revise the lists of the Senate and of the Tribes and Classes of the citizens.

By means of the Censors' mark (Nota Censoria) they could degrade anyone from the Senate, or from his Tribe or Class, for disgraceful conduct. They completed their duties in eighteen months and then resigned ; for the only exception to this rule see page 86. This office was originally created for the same reason as the praetorship, and was also thrown open to the Plebeians.

**Aediles, four—Two Curule** (see below), two Plebeian. Heads of the police, with charge of public buildings and streets ; the name being derived from aedes (a building).



The Curule Aediles also provided the games and gladiatorial shows at their own expense.

Required age, 37.

**Note.**—Curule offices were offices originally confined to the Patricians, but afterwards thrown open to the Plebeians, namely, the Consulship, Censorship, Praetorship, and Curule Aedileship. The name is derived from the Curule chair (*sella curulis*) on which these magistrates sat.

**Quaestors:** number increased from one to twenty under Sulla, and forty under Julius Caesar; they had control of the public money at the Treasury at Rome, in the provinces, and with the various armies.

**Tribunes of the Plebs:** originally two, afterwards increased to ten, Plebeians alone were eligible. Established B.C. 494, after the secession to the Sacred Mount, to protect the Plebeians. Their chief power was the right of "vetoing," *i.e.*, forbidding (*intercessio*) any proceeding, and of arresting persons; they also presided over the Assembly of the Plebeians and brought in laws.

**Dictator:** a magistrate with supreme power of life and death over the whole State, and all other magistrates; appointed by one of the Consuls at the orders of the Senate, in times of emergency, also occasionally for ceremonial purposes. He only held office for six months, resigning before that time if the purpose for which he was appointed was accomplished.

**Magister Equitum:** "Master of the Horse," appointed by the Dictator as his second-in-command.

**Consular Tribunes** (*Tribuni militares consulari potestate*), numbers varied from three to six: an office established B.C. 445, and open to the Plebeians; their power was practically the same as that of the Consuls: abolished B.C. 367, when the Consulship was thrown open to the Plebeians.

**Proconsul** : a consul whose military command was prolonged after his Consulship was over. Occasionally the title was given to a general who had not been Consul.

**Changes introduced by Sulla, B.C. 81.**

The **Consuls** and **Praetors** remained at Rome, the Consuls as Heads of the State, the Praetors as judges, and only commanded armies in the case of civil war in Italy.

The Provinces and armies on the frontiers were under **Proconsuls** and **Propraetors**, each Consul and Praetor at the end of his year of office at Rome obtaining one of these commands for the succeeding year.

**Tribunes of the Plebs** : their power was greatly restricted, but restored soon after by Pompeius and Crassus.

II.

**THE ASSEMBLIES.**

- (1) **Comitia Curiata** : Assembly of the Curiae; the original assembly, consisting only of Patricians; abolished except for ceremonial purposes when the Plebeians were admitted to the citizenship.
- (2) **Comitia Centuriata** : Assembly of the Centuries; the assembly of the whole people, Patricians and Plebeians, arranged in 193 centuries (cavalry and five classes of infantry) according to wealth. Elected consuls and other magistrates, heard appeals, and, in early days, passed laws.
- (3) **Comitia Tributa** : Assembly of the Tribes. (The Romans, besides being divided into classes by wealth, were also divided into Tribes, thirty-one rural and four city, by their place of residence.) Also an assembly of Patricians and Plebeians. It elected lower magistrates; but its other functions and origin are obscure; it has generally been confused with

confused with

- (4) **The Assembly of the Plebeians** only, voting by tribes. Instituted to elect the Tribunes. Afterwards obtained the power of passing laws, even without the consent of the Senate (Hortensian Law, B.C. 287), and became the ordinary Assembly of the People.

### III.

### LIST (OF) DATES.

N.B.—*Roman Defeats are Printed in Italics.*

	B.C.
Foundation of Rome (legendary) . . . . .	753
Expulsion of the Kings . . . . .	510
Beginning of the Wars against the Æqui and Volsci . . . . .	500
Secession to the Sacred Mount—Institution of Tribunes . . . . .	494
The Decemvirate and Laws of Twelve Tables . . . . .	450
Siege of Veii . . . . .	406-396
Battle of the <i>Allia</i> and Capture of Rome by the Gauls . . . . .	390
The Licinian Laws . . . . .	367
First Samnite War . . . . .	343-1
Revolt of the Latins—Battle of Mount Vesuvius . . . . .	340
Second Samnite War . . . . .	326-305
<i>The Caudine Forks</i> . . . . .	321
First Battle of Lake Vadimo . . . . .	310
Third Samnite War . . . . .	299-290
Battle of Sentinum . . . . .	295
✓ Hortensian Law . . . . .	287
Second Battle of Lake Vadimo . . . . .	283
War against Pyrrhus and Tarentum . . . . .	281 272
Battle of <i>Heraclea</i> . . . . .	280
Battle of <i>Asculum</i> . . . . .	279
Battle of Beneventum . . . . .	275

B.C.

<b>First Punic War</b>	264-242
Battle of Mylæ	260
Battle of Ecnomus	256
Defeat of Regulus in Africa	255
Battle of Panormus	251
Battle of <i>Drepanum</i>	249
Battle of the Aegatian Islands	242
Hamilcar Barca conquers the mercenaries	238
Death of Hamilcar Barca in Spain	228
Hannibal besieges Saguntum	219
<b>Second Punic War</b>	218-202
Battles of <i>Ticinus and Trebia</i>	218
Battle of Lake <i>Trasimenus</i>	217
Battle of <i>Canna</i>	216
Capture of Syracuse	212
Capture of Capua	211
Scipio captures New Carthage	210
Battle of Metaurus	207
Battle of Zama	202
<b>Macedonian and Syrian Wars</b>	200-168
Battle of Cynoscephalæ	197
Battle of Magnesia	190
Deaths of Hannibal and Scipio Africanus	183
Battle of Pydna	168
<b>Third Punic War—Siege and Capture of Carthage</b>	149-146
Battle of Corinth—Conquest of Greece	146
Viriathus in Spain	149-139
Capture of Numantia	133
Murder of Tiberius Gracchus	133
Death of Caius Gracchus	121
<b>War against Jugurtha</b>	112-106
<b>War against Cimbri and Teutones</b>	109-101
Battle of <i>Arausio</i>	105
Battle of <i>Aquæ Sextiæ</i>	102
Battle of <i>Vercellæ</i>	101

	B.C.
Fall of Marius . . . . .	100
Death of Drusus . . . . .	91
Social, First Mithridatic, and First Civil Wars . . . . .	90-81
Defeat of the Italians . . . . .	89
Sulla marches on Rome . . . . .	88
Marius captures Rome . . . . .	87
Death of Marius—Battle of Chæronæa . . . . .	86
Battle of Orchomenus . . . . .	85
Battles of Sacriportus and Colline Gate . . . . .	82
Dictatorship of Sulla—The Proscription . . . . .	81
Death of Sulla . . . . .	78
Wars against Sertorius, Spartacus, the Pirates, and	
Second Mithridatic War . . . . .	80-66
Sertorius rebels in Spain . . . . .	80
Battle of Cyzicus . . . . .	73
Murder of Sertorius—Battle of Cabira . . . . .	72
Defeat of Spartacus . . . . .	71
Battle of Tigranocerta . . . . .	69
Gabinian Law—Pompeius crushes the Pirates . . . . .	67
Manilian Law—Pompeius conquers Mithridates . . . . .	66
Catilinarian Conspiracy—Consulship of Cicero . . . . .	63
Alliance of Pompeius, Crassus, and Cæsar (First	
Triumvirate) . . . . .	60
Cæsar's Governorship of Gaul . . . . .	58-49
Defeat of the Helvetii and Germans . . . . .	58
Defeat of the Nervii and Belgæ . . . . .	57
Conference of Luca . . . . .	56
First Invasion of Britain . . . . .	55
Second Invasion of Britain . . . . .	54
Battle of Carrhæ—Death of Crassus . . . . .	53
Rising of the Gauls under Vercingetorix—Siege of	
Alesia . . . . .	52
Second Civil War . . . . .	49-45
Cæsar crosses the Rubicon . . . . .	49
Battle of Pharsalia—Murder of Pompeius . . . . .	48

	B.C.
Battle of Thapsus . . . . .	46
Cæsar's Laws and Reform of the Calendar . . . . .	46
Battle of Munda . . . . .	45
Murder of Cæsar . . . . .	44
Second Triumvirate—Octavius, Antonius and Lepidus . . . . .	43
Battle of Philippi . . . . .	42
Battle of Actium . . . . .	31
Return of Octavius (soon afterwards called Augustus) to Italy. Final establishment of the Empire . . . . .	29
	A.D.
Defeat of Varus by the Germans . . . . .	9
Death of Augustus . . . . .	14
Tiberius . . . . .	14-37
Caligula (Caius) . . . . .	37-41
Claudius . . . . .	41-54
Conquest of Britain . . . . .	43
Nero . . . . .	54-68
Great Fire at Rome—Persecution of the Christians . . . . .	64
Galba . . . . .	68
Otho . . . . .	69
Vitellius . . . . .	69
Vespasian . . . . .	69-79
Siege of Jerusalem . . . . .	70
Titus . . . . .	79-81
Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius—Destruction of Pompeii . . . . .	79
Domitian . . . . .	81-96
Nerva . . . . .	96-98
Trajan . . . . .	98-117
Hadrian . . . . .	117-138
Antoninus Pius . . . . .	138-161
Marcus Aurelius . . . . .	161-180
Commodus . . . . .	180-192
Septimius Severus . . . . .	193-211

---

Decius defeated and slain by the Goths . . . . . 249-251

	A.D.
Aurelian (defeated the Goths) . . . . .	270-275
Diocletian (remodelled the Empire) . . . . .	284-305
Constantine the Great . . . . .	323-337
Julian the Apostate . . . . .	361-363
Valens (defeated and slain by the Goths) . . . . .	364-378
Theodosius (defeated the Goths) . . . . .	379-395
The Empire finally divided between the East and West . . . . .	395
Capture of Rome by Alaric . . . . .	410 —
The Roman Legions recalled from Britain . . . . .	410
Defeat of the Huns under Attila at Chalons . . . . .	451
The Vandals take Rome . . . . .	454
Romulus Augustulus deposed—Fall of the Western Empire . . . . .	476 —
Charlemagne crowned Emperor—Beginning of the Holy Roman Empire . . . . .	800
Capture of Constantinople by the Turks—End of the Eastern Empire . . . . .	1453

## I. INDEX OF LATIN WORDS.

Ager Publicus, 43  
Atrium, 13

Censor, 57  
Census, 57  
Cliens, 16  
Columna Rostrata, 113  
Comitia, 15  
Consul, 34

Decemviri, 52  
Delatores, 316  
Divus, 307

Equites, 14  
Ergastulum, 177

Familia, 11  
Fasces, 15  
Flamen, 12  
Forum, 15

Gens, 11

Imperator, 281

Juvenis, 14

Lares, 13  
Logatus, 262

Lex Agraria, 47  
Ludus, 229

Magister Equitum, 57

Nota Censoria, 57

Patres, 15  
Patronus, 16  
Penates, 13  
Plebs, 16  
Pontifex, 12  
Proconsul, 114  
Proscriptio, 223  
Provocatio ad populum, 15  
Publicani, 184  
Publicum, 184

Sella Curulis, 16  
Senatus, 16  
Senex, 14  
Spolia Opima, 24  
Suffetes, 106

Tabula, 54  
Toga, 13  
Triumviri, 187

Vicus Sceleratus, 32



## II. GENERAL INDEX.

- Achæan League, 153, 162, 170  
 Achaia, Province of, 171  
 Actium, battle of, 298  
 Adherbal, 195  
 Ædiles, 179  
 Ædui, the, 254, 266  
 Ægatian Islands, battle of, 118  
 Æmilius Paullus (1), 136  
 Æmilius Paullus (2), 160  
 Æneas, 21, 105  
 Æneid, 308  
 Æqui, the, 7, 46-50, 66  
 Ætolian League, 153-7  
 Afranius, 271-2  
 Africa, Province of, 169  
 Agrarian Law, 47  
 Agricola, 325  
 Agrigentum, 110  
 Agrippa, 296, 309  
 Agrippina, 315, 319  
 Ahala Servilius, 57  
 Alaric, 336-7  
 Alba Longa, 6, 22, 27  
 Alban, Lake, 59  
 Alban, Mount, 6  
 Alesia, 266  
 Alexander, king of Epirus, 79  
 Alexandria, 278  
 Algidus, Mt., 49  
 Allia, battle of, 63  
 Alps, 129  
 Ambracia, 157  
 Amulius, 22  
 Ancus Marcius, 28  
 Annius, 75  
 Antiochus, the great, 152-7  
 Antoninus Pius, Emperor, 328  
 Antonius (1). C., 244, 246  
 Antonius (2) the Triumvir, 270,  
 273-4, 278, 287-300  
 Apollonia, 274  
 Appius Claudius (1), the De-  
 cemvir, 53  
 Appius Claudius (2), the Cen-  
 sor, 86, 98  
 Appius Claudius (3), son of the  
 censor, 117  
 Aqua Appia, 86  
 Aquæ Sextiæ, battle of, 202  
 Arausio, battle of, 199  
 Arcadius, Emperor, 336  
 Archelaus, 218  
 Ardea, 85  
 Argos, 101  
 Ariovistus, 254-7  
 Armenia, 232  
 Arminius, 312  
 Army, 14, 200  
 Arnus (Arno), 132  
 Arpinum, 243  
 Artaxata, 233  
 Aruns (1), son of Tarquinius  
 the elder, 31  
 Aruns (2), son of Tarquinius  
 -Superbus, 37  
 Arverni, the, 266  
 Arx, 19  
 Ascanius, 22  
 Asculum, battle of, 99  
 Asia, province of, 175  
 Assembly of Plebeians, 45, 90  
 Assembly of the People, 15  
 Athens, 154, 218  
 Attalus, 153  
 Attalus III., 176  
 Attila, 337

Attus Navius, 29  
 Augur, 12  
 Augustus, Emperor, 303-313  
     (*see also* Octavius (2))  
 Augustus, title of, 303, 332  
 Aurelian, Emperor, 331  
 Aventine, 23, 30, 192

#### Battles—

Actium, 298  
 Ægæan Islands, 118  
 Allia, 68  
 Aquæ Sextiæ, 202  
 Arausio, 199  
 Asculum, 99  
 Bedriacum, first, 321  
 Bedriacum, second, 322  
 Beneventum, 100  
 Cabira, 232  
 Cannæ, 136  
 Carrhæ, 263  
 Chæroneæ, 218  
 Chalons, 337  
 Colline Gate, 222  
 Cremera, 51  
 Cynoscephalæ, 154  
 Drepanum, 117  
 Ecnomus, 118  
 Gaurus, Mt., 74  
 Heraclea, 96  
 Lautulæ, 83  
 Magnesia, 157  
 Metaurus, 147  
 Milvian Bridge, 332  
 Munda, 284  
 Mutina, 291  
 Mylæ, 112  
 Naulochus, 296  
 Orohomenus, 218  
 Panormus, 115  
 Pharsalia, 276  
 Philippi, 294  
 Pistoria, 246

Pydna, 160  
 Regillus, 38  
 Sacriportus, 221  
 Sentinum, 88  
 Telamon, 124  
 Thapsus, 280  
 Thermopylæ, 156  
 Ticinus, 129  
 Tigranocerta, 232  
 Trasimenus, 133  
 Trebia, 131  
 Trifanum, 77  
 Vadimo, first, 84  
 Vadimo, second, 90  
 Vesuvius, Mt., 76  
 Zama, 149  
 Bedriacum, first battle of, 321  
 Bedriacum, second battle of,  
     322  
 Belgæ, the, 257, 265  
 Beneventum, battle of, 100  
 Bibulus, M., 249, 273-4.  
 Bithynia, 231  
 Bocchus, 197  
 Boii, the, 90  
 Bovianum, 85, 210  
 Brennus, 65  
 Britain, 259, 318, 325, 328, 337  
 Britannicus, 319  
 Brundisium, 271, 273  
 Bruttians, the, 150  
 Bruttium, 235  
 Brutulus Papius, 81  
 Brutus (1), Junius, 33  
 Brutus (2), Dec., 258, 271, 286,  
     290  
 Brutus (3), Marcus, 286, 290,  
     294  
 Burrhus, 319  
 Byrsa, 105  
 Byzantium, 333  
 Cabira, battle of, 232

- Cæsar, Caius Julius, 224, 230,  
     237, 242-288, 308  
 Cæsar, title of, 304, 332  
 Caius, Emperor, *see* Caligula  
 Calendar, the, 282  
 Caligula, Emperor, 315, 317  
 Calpurnia, 288  
 Camillus, 60, 65, 69  
 Campania, 6  
 Campanians, 78  
 Campus Martius, 20  
 Cannæ, battle of, 136  
 Canuleian Law, 55  
 Capitol, the, 19, 64  
 Caprææ, 315  
 Capua, 78, 138-143  
 Caractacus, 318  
 Carbo, 220-222  
 Carrhæ, battle of, 263  
 Carthage, 103-150, 163-169  
     214, 282,  
 Casca, 287  
 Casivellaunus, 259  
 Cassius (1), C., 286, 290, 294  
 Cassius (2), *φ.*, 270  
 Castor and Pollux, 39  
 Catilina, L. Sergius, 243-246  
 Cato (1) the Censor, 156, 164,  
     169, 171, 180  
 Cato (2) Uticensis, 241, 246,  
     249, 268, 279-281  
 Catullus, 308  
 Catulus, 202, 217  
 Caudine Forks, 81-83  
 Celtiberi, the, 173  
 Celts, the, 9  
 Censors, 57  
 Censorinus, 166  
 Cercina, 214  
 Cethegus, 245  
 Chæroneæ, battle of, 218  
 Chalons, battle of, 337  
 Charlemagne, 338  
 Christians, the, 320, 338  
 Cicero (1) M. Tullius, 183, 327,  
     242-247, 250, 260, 290-298  
     308  
 Cicero (2) Q., 265  
 Cilicia, 230  
 Cimbri, the, 198-202  
 Ciminian Forest, 61, 84  
 Cincinnatus, 49, 57  
 Cinna, 215, 220  
 Circus Maximus, 19  
 Cirta, 195  
 Cisalpine Gaul, 9, 123, 151  
 Clans, 11  
 Claudius (1), Appius (the De-  
     cemvir), 53  
 Claudius (2), Appius (the Cen-  
     sor), 86, 98  
 Claudius (3), son of the Cen-  
     sor, 117  
 Claudius (4), Emperor, 311,  
     318  
 Cleopatra, 277, 294, 298-300,  
     311, 318  
 Client, 16  
 Cloaca Maxima, 20  
 Clodius, P., 233, 250, 260, 264  
 Clusium, 37, 62  
 Clypea, 113  
 Collatinus, 36  
 Colline Gate, battle of, 222  
 Colosseum, 323  
 Columna Rostrata, 113  
 Comitia, 15, 304  
 Comitia Centuriata, 17  
 Comitia Curiata, 15  
 Comitia Tributa, 45.  
 Commodus, Emperor, 329  
 Constantine, Emperor, 332-4  
 Constantinople, 333, 339  
 Consuls, 34, 225, 305  
 Consular Tribunes, 56  
 Corfinium, 207

Corinth, 107, 282  
 Coriolanus, 48  
 Cornelia, 185, 193  
 Corsica, 122  
 Cossus, Cornelius, 58  
 Cotta, 231  
 Crassus (1), M., 234-236, 242-250, 261  
 Crassus (2), son, 263  
 Cremera, battle of, 51  
 Cremona, 124  
 Cumæ, 6, 225  
 Cures, 24  
 Curia Hostilia, 19  
 Curiatii, 26  
 Curio, 268, 273  
 Cydnus, the, 295  
 Cynoscephalæ, battle of, 154  
 Cyprus, 250  
 Cyzicus, 231

Dacians, the, 327  
 Dalmatians, the, 312  
 Debt, 14  
 Decemvirate, the, 52  
 Decius Mus (1), 74-76  
 Decius Mus (2), son, 88  
 Decius, Emperor, 330  
 Delatores, the, 316  
 Delphi, 59  
 Dentatus, M. Curius, 100  
 Diana, 30  
 Dicæarchus, 153  
 Dictator, 35  
 Dido, 105  
 Diocletian, Emperor, 331  
 Divus, 307  
 Domitian, Emperor, 324  
 Drepanum, 117  
 Drepanum, battle of, 117  
 Drusus (1), Livius, 206  
 Drusus (2), 339-311  
 Drusus (3), 315

Duilius, 112  
 Dyrhachium, 274  
 Ecnomus, battle of, 113  
 Egeria, 26  
 Egypt, 153, 277-279  
 Elagabalus, Emperor, 330  
 Emperor, title, 232  
 Empire, extent of, 175, 306  
 Ennius, 179  
 Epirus, 95, 274  
 Equites, 14, 190, 232  
 Eryx, 118  
 Etruria, 5, 60, 90  
 Etruscans, 8, 51, 58-61, 84, 91, 208-209  
 Eumenes, 156-161

Fabii, the, 50  
 Fabius (1), Kæso, 50  
 Fabius (2), Rullianus, 83-88  
 Fabius (3), Cunctator, 125, 134, 145  
 Fabricius, 99  
 Falerii, 60  
 Fasces, the, 15  
 Faustulus, 22  
 Fidenæ, 58  
 Fimbria, 219  
 Flaccus, 218  
 Flamen, 12  
 Flamininus, 154  
 Flaminius, 123, 132  
 Forum, 15, 19  
 Franks, the, 335, 338  
 Fregellæ, 78  
 Fulvia, 293, 296

Gabinian Law, 237  
 Gabinius, 237  
 Gades, 121  
 Galba (1), Sulpicius, 171  
 Galba (2), Emperor, 321

- Gallia, 9, 253  
 Gallia Cisalpina, 9, 123, 151  
 Gallia Narbonensis, 176, 198, 250  
 Gallia Transalpina, 9, 253  
 Gauls, 9, 62, 87, 124, 132, 252-267  
 Gaurus, Mt., battle of, 74  
 Gellius Egnatius, 88  
 Gens, 11  
 Gergovia, 266  
 Germanicus, 311, 315  
 Germans, the, 253, 285, 312  
 Glabrio, 233  
 Gladiators, 179, 229  
 Glaucia, 204  
 Goths, the, 330, 336  
 Gracchus (1), Tiberius, 151  
 Gracchus (2), Tib. the Tribune, 185-188  
 Gracchus (3) Caius, 185, 189-192  
 Greece, 153, 162, 170, 179  
 Greeks, 8, 153, 179  
 Hadrian Emperor, 327  
 Hamilcar Barca, 118-123  
 Hannibal, 122, 124-151, 156-158  
 Hanno, 110  
 Hasdrubal (1), 123  
 Hasdrubal (2), brother of Hannibal, 122, 139, 141, 145-147  
 Hasdrubal (3), 148  
 Hasdrubal (4), 168  
 Helvetii, the, 253-255  
 Heraclea, battle of, 96  
 Herculaneum, 323  
 Herminius, 37  
 Hernici, the, 47  
 Hiero, 109, 141  
 Honorius, Emperor. 336  
 Horace, 308  
 Horatii, 26  
 Horatius Cocles, 37  
 Hortensian Law, 90  
 Hortensius, 90  
 Hungarians, 338  
 Huns, 334, 338  
 Iberda, 272  
 Illyria, 123, 230  
 Imperator, title of, 281  
 Inexpiable war, 122  
 Informers, 316  
 Italians, the, 191, 206, 224  
 Italica, 207, 210  
 Janiculum, 19, 90  
 Janus, 26, 301  
 Jerusalem, siege of, 372  
 Jews, the, 318  
 Juba, 273  
 Judea, 240  
 Jugurtha, 134-138  
 Julia (1), daughter of Julius Cæsar, 249, 264  
 Julia (2), 309-311  
 Julian the Apostate, Emperor, 334  
 Julianus, Emperor, 330  
 Jupiter, 7, 24, 27, 75  
 Jura, Mts., 255  
 Kineas, 97  
 Labarum, the, 333  
 Labienus, 257, 265, 270, 279, 284  
 Lævinus, 96  
 Lares, 13  
 Lars Porsenna, 37  
 Latin War, 75  
 Latins, 6, 72, 74-78  
 Latin League, 6, 12, 77

Latinus, King, 21  
 Latium, 6  
 Lautulæ, battle of, 83  
 Lavinia, 21  
 Lavinium, 21  
 Legatus, 262  
 Legion, 14, 96  
 Lemanus, Lake, 254  
 Lentulus, 245  
 Leo, Pope, 338  
 Lepidus (1), 228  
 Lepidus (2), 287, 292, 297  
 Licinian Laws, 69  
 Licinius, C., 69  
 Liotor, 15  
 Ligurians, 7, 151  
 Lilybæum, 100, 116  
 Liris, 6  
 Livia, 309  
 Livius Salinator, 146  
 Livy, 308  
 Luca, conference at, 261  
 Luceria, 81  
 Lucretia, 86  
 Lucretius, 308.  
 Lucullus, 231-233, 238, 248  
 Ludi Romani, 20  
 Lupercalia, 285  
 Lusitani, 171, 228  
 Lutatius Catulus, 119  
  
 Macedonia, 158-161  
 Macedonian War, first, 154  
 Macedonian War, second, 158  
 Mæcenæ, 308  
 Magna Græcia, 8  
 Magnesia, battle of, 157  
 Mago, 122, 131  
 Maharbal, 137  
 Mamertines, the, 109  
 Mamilius, 38  
 Mancinus, 173  
 Manilian Law, 238

Manilius, 238  
 Manlius (1), Marcus, 64, 67  
 Manlius (2), Torquatus, 68,  
     74-77  
 Manlius (3), Volso, 113  
 Marcellus (1), 124, 138, 142  
 Marcellus (2), 268  
 Marcellus (3), 309  
 Marcus Aurelius, emperor, 328  
 Marius (1), C., 196-217  
 Marius (2), son, 221  
 Mars, 20, 22, 109  
 Marsi, 207  
 Marsian War, *see* Social War  
 Masinissa, 148, 164, 169  
 Massilia, 128, 271  
 Master of the Horse, 57  
 Mauretania, 197  
 Maximus, 336  
 Megacles, 96  
 Melpum, 62  
 Menenius Agrippa, 44  
 Messalina, 319  
 Messana, 109  
 Metaurus, battle of, 147  
 Metellus (1), 115  
 Metellus (2), 170  
 Metellus (3), Numidicus, 196  
 Metellus (4), Nepos, 247  
 Metellus (5), Scipio, 280  
 Metius, 75  
 Mettus, 27  
 Milo (1), 101  
 Milo (2), 260, 264  
 Milvian Bridge, battle of, 332  
 Minturnæ, 213  
 Minucius, 135  
 Misenum, 296  
 Mithridates, 210, 216, 231-233,  
     238  
 Mons Sacer, 44  
 Mucius Scævola, 38  
 Mummius, 170

- Munda, battle of, 284  
 Mutina, siege and battle of, 291  
 Mylæ, battle of, 112  
  
 Naulochus, battle of, 296  
 Nero (1), 146  
 Nero (2), Emperor, 319-321  
 Nerva, Emperor, 327  
 Nervii, 257, 265  
 New Carthage, 128, 144  
 Nola, 212  
 Nota Censoria, 57  
 Numantia, 172-174  
 Numa, Pompilius, 25  
 Numidia, 106, 194-198, 273  
 Numidian Cavalry, 128  
 Numitor, 22  
  
 Octavia (1), 296  
 Octavia (2), 319  
 Octavius (1), Tribune, 187  
 Octavius (2), 215-217  
 Octavius (3), C., *see also* Augustus, 283-285, 290-303  
 Odoacer, 338  
 Orchomenus, battle of, 218  
 Oricum, 274  
 Ostia, 28, 231  
 Otho, Emperor, 321  
 Ovid, 308  
  
 Palæopolis, 80  
 Palatine Hill, 10, 22  
 Pannonians, the, 312  
 Panormus, battle of, 115  
 Papirius Cursor, 85  
 Parthians, the, 262, 285, 297, 311  
 Patres, 15  
 Patricians, 16, 70  
 Patron, 16  
 Pax Romana, 306  
  
 Penates, 13  
 Pergamus, 153  
 Perpenna, 234  
 Perseus, 158  
 Petreius, 271  
 Phalanx, 96  
 Pharnaces, 239, 279  
 Pharsalia, battle of, 276  
 Philip, 152-155, 159  
 Philippi, battle of, 294  
 Phœnicians, 103  
 Pirates, the, 230, 237  
 Pistoria, battle of, 246  
 Placentia, 124  
 Plebeians, 16, 70  
 Polybius, 162  
 Pompeii, 323  
 Pompeius (1), 178  
 Pompeius (2), Strabo, 210  
 Pompeius (3), Magnus 220-240, 247-250, 260-265  
 Pompeius (4), Cn., 283  
 Pompeius (5), Sextus, 283, 294  
 Pons Sublicius, 19, 37  
 Pontifex, 12  
 Pontius, C., 81-83  
 Pontus, 210  
 Pope, the, 334  
 Poppæa Sabina, 320  
 Popular Party, 71, 181, 305  
 Postumius (1), Aulus, 39  
 Postumius (2), 94  
 Præneste, 72, 221  
 Prætor, 70  
 Prætorian Guards, 315, 330  
 Princeps, title of, 304  
 Proconsul, 114  
 Proscriptions, 223, 293  
 Province, meaning of, 112  
 "Province," the, 176  
 Provinces, 182, 305  
 Provocatio ad populum, 15  
 Prusias, 158

- Ptolemy (1), Philopator, 152  
 Ptolemy (2), 277-279  
 Public Land, 48  
 Publicans, 183  
 Punic War, first, 109-120  
 Punic War, second, 125-151  
 Punic War, third, 165-169  
 Pydna, battle of, 160  
 Pyrrhus, 95-102  
  
 Quæstor, 189  
 Quintilis, 39, 284  
 Quirinus, 25  
 Quirites, 25  
  
 Ravenna, 336  
 Regillus, battle of, 38  
 Regulus, 113-116  
 Remus, 22  
 Rhea Silvia, 22  
 Rhine, 258, 312  
 Rhodes, 153-161  
 Rome, city of, 10, 18, 331, 337  
 Romulus, 22-25  
 Romulus Augustulus, Emperor, 388  
 Rubicon, 270  
 Rufus, Sulpicius, 211-213  
  
 Sabellians, 7  
 Sabines, 7, 24  
 Sacred Mount, Secession to, 44, 54  
 Sacriportus, battle of, 221  
 Saguntum, 124  
 Samnites, 7, 58, 73-90, 102, 208-210, 216, 221  
 Samnite War, first, 73  
 Samnite War, second, 80-85  
 Samnite War, third, 87-89  
 Sapor, 330  
 Sardinia, 122, 177  
 Saturnalia, 99  
 Saturninus, 204  
 Scævola, 38  
 Scipio (1), P., 127-131, 139, 141, 144  
 Scipio (2), Cn., 128, 139, 141, 144  
 Scipio (3), Africanus, 130, 144-151, 156, 158  
 Scipio (4), Asiaticus, 156, 158  
 Scipio (5), Æmilianus, 167, 173, 188  
 Scribonia, 309  
 Sejanus, 315  
 Sella Curulis, 15  
 Sempronius, 127, 130  
 Senate, 15, 180, 304, 331  
 Seneca, 319  
 Senones, the, 90  
 Sentinum, battle of, 88  
 Sequani, 254  
 Sertorius, 217, 228, 234  
 Servilius, 132  
 Servilius Ahala, 57  
 Servius Tullius, 30  
 Seven hills of Rome, 18  
 Severus, Emperor, 330  
 Sextius, L., 69  
 Sextus Tarquinius, 36  
 Sibylline Books, 32  
 Siccus Dentatus, 53  
 Sicily, 100, 106, 119, 142  
 Slavery, 14, 177  
 Social (or Marsian) War, 207-210  
 Spain, 121, 151, 171-174  
 Sparta, 170  
 Spartacus, 229, 235  
 Spolia Opima, 24, 58, 124  
 Spurius (1), Cassius, 46  
 Spurius (2), Lartius, 37  
 Spurius (3), Mælius, 57  
 Stilicho, 336  
 Sulla, 197, 208-226



Sutrium, 84  
 Syphax, 148  
 Syracuse, 141  
 Syria, 153, 240, 262, 269  
  
 Tanaquil, 28  
 Tarentum, 92, 142, 145  
 Tarpeia, 24  
 Tarpeian Rock, 19  
 Tarquinius (1), 28  
 Tarquinius (2), 31-40  
 Tarsus, 294  
 Telamon, battle of, 124  
 Tempe, 159  
 Teutones, 201  
 Thapsus, battle of, 280  
 Theodosius, Emperor, 336  
 Thermopylæ, battle of, 156  
 Tiberius, Emperor, 309-317  
 Tibur, 72  
 Ticius, battle of, 129  
 Tigranes, 232, 239  
 Tigranocerta, battle of, 232  
 Titus (1), Emperor, 322  
 Titus (2), Tattius, 24  
 Toga, 13  
 Trajan, Emperor, 327  
 Trasimenus, battle of, 133  
 Treason, law of, 316  
 Trebia, battle of, 131  
 Trebonius, 271  
 Tribunes of the Plebs, 45  
 Trifanum, battle of, 77  
 Triumph, 19  
 Triumvirate, first, 248  
 Triumvirate, second, 292  
 Triumviri, 187  
 Tullia, 31  
 Tullianum, 19  
 Tullus Hostilius, 26  
 Turnus, 21  
 Tusculum, 72  
 Twelve Tables, Laws of, 54

Umbrians, 6, 87, 289  
 Utica, 148, 169, 279  
  
 Vadimo, first battle of, 84  
 Vadimo, second battle of, 90  
 Valens, Emperor, 334-336  
 Valentinian, Emperor, 334  
 Valerian, Emperor, 330  
 Valerius (1), Poplicola, 37  
 Valerius (2), Corvus, 68, 74  
 Vandals, 334-338  
 Varro, 135  
 Varus, 312  
 Veii, 58-60  
 Veneti, 258  
 Venusia, 89  
 Vercellæ, battle of, 203  
 Vercingetorix, 266, 281  
 Verres, 183  
 Vespasian, Emperor, 322  
 Vesta, 12  
 Vestal Virgins, 12  
 Vesuvius, Mt., battle of, 76  
 Vesuvius, Mt., 229, 323  
 Veturia, 49  
 Via Appia, 86, 102  
 Via Flaminia, 124  
 Via Sacra, 19  
 Vicus Sceleratus, 32  
 Virgil, 308  
 Virginia, 53  
 Virginius, 53  
 Viriathus, 171  
 Vitellius Emperor, 321  
 Volumnia, 49  
 Volsci, the, 7, 45-50, 66  
  
 Wall of Servius Tullius, 20  
 Xanthippus, 114  
 Year of Confusion, 283  
 Zama, battle of, 149

EN



THE NEW  
PUBLIC LIB

ASTOR, LE  
TIDEN FOUN.

10

22

Digitized by Google













